

H. Q. Mitchell

# Grammar & Vocabulary Practice

Upper-Intermediate - B2

for Cambridge,  
Michigan  
and other exams

*Teacher's Book*

  
mmpublications



# Introduction

---

**Grammar Practice & Vocabulary** is aimed at **upper-intermediate / B2** level students.

As well as teaching grammar points, the aim of the book is to familiarise students with the format of the Revised Use of English Paper of the **Cambridge FCE** Examination as well as with the Grammar and Vocabulary sections of the **University of Michigan ECCE**.

This book consists of **24 units**, **6 revision units** and **2 practice tests**.

**Each unit is made up of:**

- **Grammar**  
a thorough review of grammatical structures with clear explanations and examples illustrating every structure
- **Grammar exercises**  
a variety of exercises, some of which are modelled on either Paper 3 of the **Cambridge FCE** Examination or the grammar section of the **Michigan ECCE**, providing general practice on the grammatical structures taught in the unit
- **Transformation**  
rewording sentences using key words; this exercise tests grammar
- **Phrasal Verbs**  
clear explanations of a set of phrasal verbs together with an exercise practising them
- **Prepositions and Prepositional phrases**  
an exercise practising the use of prepositions with verbs, nouns and adjectives as well as their use in idioms
- **Derivatives**  
an exercise based on word formation to help students enrich their vocabulary
- **Words easily confused**  
clear explanations of words that students commonly confuse and an exercise practising them.
- **Revision units and Practice FCE and ECCE Tests**

The **Practice Tests** are modelled on the **Cambridge FCE Use of English Paper** and on the Grammar and Vocabulary sections of the **University of Michigan Examination for the ECCE**.

The book includes a **dictionary** and **appendices** with:

- **Prepositions**
- **Prepositional Phrases**
- **Derivatives**

There is a **Teacher's Book** available with the answers overprinted on the Student's Book, Revision Tests, Final FCE Test, Final ECCE Test and Key to tests.

## **Grammar & Vocabulary Practice**

H.Q. Mitchell

Published by: **MM Publications**

[www.mmpi.net](http://www.mmpi.net) [www.mmpi.co.uk](http://www.mmpi.co.uk)

[info@mmpi.net](mailto:info@mmpi.net)

### **Offices**

Great Britain - Greece - Poland - France - Cyprus - USA - Turkey

Associated companies and representatives throughout the world.

Copyright © 2008 MM Publications

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without permission in writing from the publishers.

The publishers have tried to contact all copyright holders, but in cases where they may have failed, they will be pleased to make the necessary arrangements at the first opportunity.

Produced in the EU



# Contents

Unit 1	Present Time.....	4
Unit 2	Past Time.....	8
Unit 3	Present Perfect.....	12
Unit 4	Future Time.....	17
	<b>Revision 1</b> .....	21
Unit 5	Infinitive.....	24
Unit 6	-ing form.....	29
Unit 7	Modal Verbs I.....	34
Unit 8	Modal Verbs II.....	39
	<b>Revision 2</b> .....	44
Unit 9	Articles.....	47
Unit 10	Nouns.....	52
Unit 11	Adjectives-Adverbs-Comparisons.....	57
Unit 12	Determiners.....	64
	<b>Revision 3</b> .....	69
Unit 13	Pronouns-Possessives.....	72
Unit 14	Passive Voice.....	77
Unit 15	Causative Form.....	82
Unit 16	Conditionals.....	86
	<b>Revision 4</b> .....	91
Unit 17	Unreal Past-Would rather-Had better.....	94
Unit 18	Reported Speech.....	100
Unit 19	Question Forms.....	106
Unit 20	Clauses I.....	112
Unit 21	Clauses II.....	118
	<b>Revision 5</b> .....	124
Unit 22	Linking Words.....	127
Unit 23	Participles.....	132
Unit 24	Emphatic/Exclamatory Structures-Inversion.....	136
	<b>Revision 6</b> .....	141
	Final FCE Practice Test.....	144
	Final ECCE Practice Test.....	148
	Dictionary.....	153
	Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns with Prepositions.....	161
	Prepositional Phrases.....	163
	Derivatives.....	165
	Irregular Verbs.....	168
<b>Teacher's Book Contents</b>		
	<b>Revision Test 1</b> .....	170
	<b>Revision Test 2</b> .....	173
	<b>Revision Test 3</b> .....	176
	<b>Revision Test 4</b> .....	179
	<b>Revision Test 5</b> .....	182
	<b>Revision Test 6</b> .....	185
	<b>Final FCE Test</b> .....	188
	<b>Final ECCE Test</b> .....	192
	<b>Key to Tests</b> .....	197

# unit | 01 | Present Time

## The Present Simple is used:

- for habitual or repeated actions and situations.  
*I watch this show once a week.*
- for general truths and natural phenomena.  
*The earth goes round the sun.*  
*Most rivers flow into the sea.*
- for permanent situations in the present.  
*James lives in Zurich.*
- for future actions related to timetables and programmes.  
*The train leaves at six o'clock.*
- for headlines, sports commentaries, story-telling, reviews of films and books, directions and instructions.  
*Three women rob bank.*  
*Martin takes the ball and scores.*  
*In this episode, Bob marries Julia.*  
*You turn left at this junction and you'll find it.*
- in exclamatory sentences with "Here...!" / "There...!"  
*Here comes the bride! There he goes again!*

### Time Expressions

often, usually, always, never, sometimes, seldom, rarely, hardly ever, every day/week, etc.

## The Present Progressive is used:

- for actions or events happening at or around the time of speaking.  
*Look! That boy is climbing up a tree.*
- for temporary states in the present.  
*David is doing his military service.*  
*I'm studying French this term.*
- for situations which are changing or developing around the present.  
*The problem of pollution is getting more and more serious.*
- for planned future actions related to personal arrangements.  
*I'm travelling to London tomorrow.*
- with adverbs of frequency (*constantly, always, etc.*), for emphasis or to express annoying habits.  
*Susan is very kind; she is always helping the poor.*  
*He is always leaving his clothes on the floor!*

### Time Expressions

now, at present, at the moment, nowadays, this month, etc.

## Stative Verbs

They express a state - not an action - and are not used in the Progressive Tenses:

- verbs of the senses:  
*feel, hear, see, smell, taste, notice, etc.*
- verbs of emotions and preferences:  
*like, dislike, love, hate, fear, mind, want, wish, need, prefer, admire, etc.*
- verbs of perception, belief, knowledge, ownership:  
*think, believe, know, understand, expect, remember, forget, hope, have, own, belong (to), etc.*
- other verbs which describe permanent states:  
*be, cost, weigh, seem, appear, consist (of), etc.*

### note

Some stative verbs can be used in the progressive forms when they express actions rather than states but with a difference in meaning.

#### State

They have a wonderful house.  
I see Mary coming towards us.  
I think she is clever.  
Do I smell cigarette smoke?  
This chewing-gum tastes like strawberry.  
He is very selfish. (=that is his character.)

#### Action

I'm having a bath now.  
I'm seeing the doctor tomorrow at 11:00.  
I'm thinking of buying a new car.  
Why are you smelling the milk? Do you think it's gone off?  
She is tasting the soup to see if it needs any more salt.  
Why is he being selfish? (=why is he behaving so selfishly?)

**Listen, look** and **watch**, though verbs of the senses, can also be used in the progressive tenses because they express voluntary actions.

*Jane is listening to music.*



## Grammar Practice

**A** Read what the following people have to say about learning English in Britain. Complete with the Present Progressive or the Present Simple of the verbs in brackets.

As part of my job, I travel (travel) abroad a lot, so I need (need) to improve my English. For this reason, I am attending (attend) a course in Business English at a Language Institute in London. The course lasts (last) three weeks.



I come (come) from Italy but I am studying (study) in England at the moment. I am staying (stay) with a British family. In this way, my English improves/is improving (improve) faster because I don't/am not just use/using (not use) it in the classroom but in my everyday life as well.

I visit (visit) England every two or three years, so I speak (speak) some English but not much. At present I am doing (do) a course at a Language School in London and I am learning (learn) lots of new stuff! Apart from that, in the afternoons I go (go) out with my classmates and we try/ are trying (try) to practise our English as much as possible.



**B** Circle the correct answers.

- In this story, a girl **finds** / **is finding** a time machine and **travels** / **is travelling** through time.
- Don't bother me now. I **write** / **am writing** an important letter.
- I **am thinking** / **think** about grandmother. We hardly ever **visit** / **are visiting** her. Let's visit her tomorrow.
- The minibus, which **is taking** / **takes** people to the other side of the island, **leaves** / **is leaving** at 11:00 a.m. and **is returning** / **returns** at 6:00 p.m..
- I **sleep** / **am sleeping** at my mother's house this week because I **am having** / **have** my house painted.
- "When **are you leaving** / **do you leave** for Rome?"  
"Tomorrow at 8:00 a.m.."
- I **think** / **am thinking** you should buy him a tie. He **is liking** / **likes** to dress formally.
- Flowers **bloom** / **are blooming** in spring.
- You **are turning** / **turn** left at the traffic lights and **go** / **are going** up Oxford Street.
- Here **comes** / **is coming** Kelly. Let's tell her the news.

**C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

1. John never stops criticising my friends.

**always** John is always criticising my friends.

2. We've arranged to meet at 8:00 p.m. tomorrow.

**are** We are meeting at 8:00 p.m. tomorrow.

3. What time is your plane scheduled to arrive at Heathrow?

**land** What time does your plane land at Heathrow?

4. I have arranged to have dinner with Jerry tonight.

**am** I am having dinner with Jerry tonight.

5. The older he gets, the more eccentric he becomes.

**is** As time goes by, he is getting/becoming more and more eccentric.

6. They don't like spicy food, so they avoid eating it.

**never** They never eat spicy food as they don't like it.

7. Jane has found a job at a supermarket for the summer.

**is** Jane is working at a supermarket this summer.

8. How much is that green jacket, please?

**cost** How much does that green jacket cost, please?

## Vocabulary Practice

**A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.**

<b>ask for:</b>	request sth
<b>ask out:</b>	invite sb to go out with you
<b>blow up:</b>	explode
<b>break down:</b>	(1) stop working (for a piece of machinery) (2) lose control of your feelings or emotions
<b>break in:</b>	enter a building illegally or by force (intransitive)
<b>break into:</b>	enter a building illegally or by force (transitive)
<b>break up:</b>	(1) divide into smaller parts (2) give an end to a meeting, relationship, gathering, etc.

It was my birthday so I asked out my best friend to celebrate it with me. When we had finished having dinner, I asked for the bill.

As I was looking out of the window, I saw three masked men trying to break into the bank across the street. Before I could react, there was an explosion. The robbers had blown up a car that was parked near the bank to distract people's attention, so that they could break in without being noticed.

Just then, the robbers ran out of the bank and got into a white Fiat. But they were unlucky. Five hundred metres down the street their car broke down and they were caught.

After the incident, the police broke up the crowd of people that had gathered and life returned to normal again.



## B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

**at the age of:** a person's age at the time of an event

**at the beginning (of):** at the start of sth

**at breakfast/lunch/dinner:** the time of the meal during which sth happens

**at the end (of):** at the last part of sth

**at first:** initially

**at first sight:** when first seen

**at ... km per hour:** the speed at which sth moves

1. Tax forms must be handed in at the beginning of March. After the 10th, you will have to pay a fine.
2. They got married within six months of their first meeting; it was love at first sight.
3. At the age of 35, Mark decided to study engineering.
4. Tom had an accident because he was speeding. He was going at 140 km per hour.
5. At the end of the game, we couldn't decide who the winner was.
6. At first, I thought she was joking but then I realised that she was serious.
7. We're having a small surprise party at lunch today, so make sure you're back at the office by 12:30 p.m..

## C Complete using the correct form of the verbs given.

**rent (v):** regularly pay money to the owner of sth in order to have and use it for a long period of time

**hire (v):** (1) pay money to the owner of sth in order to use it for a period of time  
(2) employ sb to do a particular job for you

**let (v):** allow the use of your property in exchange for money

**leave (v):** forget or deliberately not take sb or sth with you (used when the place is mentioned)

**forget (v):** fail to remember or bring sth with you

**borrow (v):** take sth from sb with their permission, intending to return it in the future

**lend (v):** allow sb to use sth that you own for a period of time

1. My parents never let their country house because they go there every weekend.
2. When she moved to the city, she rented a flat.
3. The school hired a teacher to help the slow learners.
4. We couldn't get into the fashion show since we had left the invitations at home.
5. I couldn't pay for the shoes I wanted to buy. I had forgotten to take my credit card.
6. If you borrow something from a friend, you should take good care of it.
7. Steve never lends his CDs to anybody.



# unit | 02 | Past Time

## The Past Simple is used to describe:

- completed actions that took place at a definite time in the past. The time is either mentioned or implied.  
*Mary visited the British Museum when she was in London.*  
*Peter won first prize in the art competition.*
- permanent situations in the past.  
*John lived in Ireland for 15 years. (He doesn't live there any more.)*
- completed actions that took place one after the other in the past (in story-telling or narratives).  
*Sue woke up, washed her face and had breakfast.*
- past habits or repeated actions in the past; adverbs of frequency (*always, often, seldom, never, etc.*) may also be used.  
*When Paul was younger, he often went fishing with his father.*

### Time Expressions

yesterday, then, ago, last month/night/week, when, etc.

## The Past Progressive is used to describe:

- an action that was in progress at a definite time in the past.  
*This time last Friday, I was flying to London.*
- actions happening at the same time in the past.  
*While Helen was watching TV, Nick was studying.*
- a lengthy action that was in progress when a shorter or sudden one interrupted it. The longer action is in the Past Progressive and the shorter one is in the Past Simple (usually introduced by *when*).  
*She was having dinner when the lights went out.*
- background scenes to a story.  
*It was early in the evening and it was beginning to get dark. She was having a cup of tea....*
- temporary past states or actions.  
*He was writing a play in those days.*
- repeated past actions or annoying past habits (with *always, continually, etc.*).  
*My brother was always getting into trouble in the past.*

### Time Expressions

while, as, etc.

### note

- **used to + infinitive** expresses permanent states, past habits or repeated actions in the past.  
*My grandfather used to be a librarian.*  
*He used to smoke heavily when he was younger.*
- **would + infinitive** expresses past habits or describes someone's typical behaviour in the past.  
*Every evening he would do his homework, watch TV and go to bed quite early.*

## The Past Perfect Simple is used:

- for an action which was completed before another one in the past. The action which happened first is in the Past Perfect Simple while the action which followed is in the Past Simple (in time clauses introduced by *before, after, when, by the time*). However, when we describe the actions in the order that they happened, we often use the Past Simple.  
*By the time we arrived, the film had started.*  
*They (had) hung up before I answered the phone.*
- for a past action that was completed before a definite time in the past.  
*Angela had finished cooking by 11:30 a.m..*
- with adjectives in the superlative degree and expressions such as: *the first/second..., the only..., etc.*  
*That was the first time I had been to Paris.*  
*It was the worst time I had ever had.*

### Time Expressions

by+a certain time, by the time, after, before, when, etc.

## The Past Perfect Progressive is used:

- to emphasise the duration of an action that had been in progress up to a moment in the past or before another past event.  
*By 1987, he had been working in New York for 5 years.*  
*He had been teaching for 35 years when he retired.*
- for an action whose duration caused visible results later on in the past.  
*When they came back from the beach, their skin was red. They had been lying in the sun for 5 hours!*

### Time Expressions

by, for, since, after, before, how long, etc.



## Grammar Practice

### A Circle the correct answers.

1. As a teenager, I **used** / **would** to do things that my parents weren't approving / **didn't approve** of. They **were always complaining** / **had always been complaining** about my actions. When they **lectured** / **had lectured** me, I **had covered** / **would cover** my ears and ignore them. Now, I'm experiencing the same thing with my own children!
2. Today I **had had** / **had** an awful day. I **arrived** / **was arriving** at the office, **sat** / **was sitting** down at my desk and suddenly **had discovered** / **discovered** that I **had lost** / **lost** a document on my computer because of a virus. I **worked** / **had been working** on it for the past two days. As if that **wasn't** / **wasn't being** enough, a colleague **would get** / **was getting** on my nerves. While I **had been trying** / **was trying** to remain calm, she **had laughed** / **was laughing** at me.



### B Rephrase the following sentences using the words in brackets.

1. I put on ten kilos and then I decided to go on a diet. (**by the time**)  
 By the time I decided to go on a diet, I had put on ten kilos. **or** I had put on ten kilos by the time I decided to go on a diet.
2. First, they washed the car and then they waxed it. (**after**)  
 After they (had) washed the car, they waxed it. **or** They waxed the car after they (had) washed it.
3. Lisa made a sandwich and then sat on the sofa to watch TV. (**before**)  
 Before Lisa sat on the sofa to watch TV, she (had) made a sandwich. **or** Lisa (had) made a sandwich before she sat on the sofa to watch TV.
4. We packed our suitcases and then left for the airport. (**as soon as**)  
 As soon as we (had) packed our suitcases, we left for the airport. **or** We left for the airport as soon as we (had) packed our suitcases.
5. Judy was walking down the street when she saw an accident. (**as**)  
 As Judy was walking down the street, she saw an accident. **or** Judy saw an accident as she was walking down the street.



### C Choose the correct answers.

- When the children \_\_\_\_\_ home, it was obvious that they had been playing in mud.  
a. were arriving      **b. arrived**      c. arrive
- Michael \_\_\_\_\_ in the queue to buy a ticket for the train when he heard a strange voice.  
a. waited      **b. was waiting**      c. had waited
- In my youth, I \_\_\_\_\_ the world and often slept under the stars.  
**a. travelled**      b. was travelling      c. travel
- The thieves \_\_\_\_\_ houses for two years before they were finally caught.  
**a. had been breaking into**      b. are breaking into      c. break into
- I \_\_\_\_\_ my studies by 1990.  
a. complete      b. was completing      **c. had completed**

### D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- When he was younger, he went to the cinema every week.  
**used**      When he was younger, he \_\_\_\_\_ **used to go to** \_\_\_\_\_ the cinema every week.
- I hadn't tasted Chinese food before.  
**first**      It was the \_\_\_\_\_ **first time I had tasted** \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese food.
- While we were in London, it never stopped raining.  
**continuously**      It **was raining continuously/rained continuously** while we were in London.
- I worked at a restaurant in those days.  
**was**      In those days, I \_\_\_\_\_ **was working** \_\_\_\_\_ at a restaurant.
- After walking for a mile, they realised that someone was missing.  
**had**      They \_\_\_\_\_ **had walked/had been walking** \_\_\_\_\_ for a mile when they realised that someone was missing.
- That was the only science-fiction book he had read.  
**never**      He \_\_\_\_\_ **had never read** \_\_\_\_\_ a science-fiction book before.
- When Mark was a student, he was in the habit of forgetting his books.  
**always**      Mark \_\_\_\_\_ **was always forgetting** \_\_\_\_\_ his books when he was a student.
- Jake made a speech and then we left the ceremony.  
**until**      We didn't leave the ceremony \_\_\_\_\_ **until Jake (had) made** \_\_\_\_\_ a speech.





## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

<b>at last:</b>	finally
<b>at least:</b>	no less than; the minimum that could be done
<b>at night:</b>	late in the evening
<b>at noon:</b>	in the middle of the day
<b>at peace/war:</b>	in a state of harmony/conflict
<b>at present:</b>	now
<b>at the same time:</b>	simultaneously

- The unemployment rate is high at present.
- You could at least clean up your room. You don't do anything to help me with the housework.
- He started working on this report at 8:00 a.m. and stopped at noon for lunch.
- You shouldn't eat and talk at the same time.
- At last, the bus arrived. We had been waiting for an hour.
- The baby woke up at night and started crying. It was afraid of the dark.
- In order to be happy, you should always be at peace with yourself.

### B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### A GARLIC A DAY KEEPS THE DOCTOR AWAY

You may know that Asian, Middle Eastern and Mediterranean cultures have

traditionally used garlic in their dishes. What you may not know is that garlic was also thought of as a valuable medicine by many ancient civilisations.

Today, professionals in the field of nutrition have come up with new information which is indeed quite surprising. Apparently, not only is garlic good for you but it also helps you overcome various illnesses.

The main disadvantage of eating garlic is of course bad breath. Cooking it, reduces the strong smell and eating parsley, which is a natural deodoriser, also helps minimise the smell. So, it's time we took the benefits of garlic seriously.

Why not add it to some of your favourite dishes!

**TRADITION**

**VALUE**

**PROFESSION**

**INFORM, SURPRISE**

**ILL**

**ADVANTAGE, BREATHE**

**NATURE**

**SERIOUS**

**FAVOUR**

### C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

<b>job</b> (n):	the work sb does in order to earn money; employment
<b>work</b> (n):	(1) particular tasks sb has to do in their job (2) the place where sb does their job
<b>duty</b> (n):	the work that sb is responsible for getting done
<b>task</b> (n):	activity sb has to do, usually as part of a larger project

<b>see</b> (v):	notice, observe, take a look at sb/sth
<b>watch</b> (v):	look at sb/sth for a period of time and observe what is happening
<b>look (at)</b> (v):	turn your eyes to a particular direction, see what is there or what sb/sth is like

- Don't interrupt me now. I've got a lot of work to do.
- Julie found a good job close to where she lives.
- One of my duties as a nurse is to be on time because lives depend on it.
- Our teacher gave us a few tasks to do during the summer holidays.
- I happened to look out of my window when my cousin was walking past.
- Did you see Mary's costume at the carnival? It was wonderful!
- I watched the football match before I went to bed.



# unit | 03 | Present Perfect

## The Present Perfect Simple is used:

- for actions which started in the past and are still happening.  
*I have known him for three years. (I still know him.)*
- for past actions whose results are connected to the present.  
*The dog has spilt the milk. (The floor is dirty.)*
- to announce news, changes or events that affect the present.  
*He has lost almost all his hair.*
- for past actions whose time is not stated, or for recently completed actions.  
*He has travelled to India.*  
*I've just finished my homework.*
- with **today, this morning/week** etc., if these periods of time are not finished at the time of speaking.  
*He has written two letters this morning. (It is still morning.)*
- with adjectives in the superlative degree or expressions like: *the only/first/second...*, etc.  
*This is the most expensive suit I've ever bought.*  
*This is the third time Jack has visited the USA.*

### Time Expressions

since, for, just, yet, already, how long, ever, never, etc.

## The Present Perfect Progressive is used:

- to emphasise the duration of an action which started in the past and is still happening. The action may or may not be completed.  
*They have been studying French for five years.*
- for actions that have been going on up to the recent past with obvious results in the present.  
*"Why is the road so slippery?"*  
*"It has been raining."*
- for actions which are temporary rather than permanent.  
*He has been working overtime this week as there is a lot of work to do at the office.*
- to show anger, annoyance, irritation or to demand an explanation for a very recent action.  
*Who has been wearing my coat?*  
*Have you been drinking again?*

### Time Expressions

how long, for, since, all day/morning, etc.

## Differences

### The Present Perfect Simple is used:

- for permanent situations.  
*She has lived in London all her life.*
- to emphasise the result of an action.  
*I've called him three times this morning.*
- for actions that are already finished.  
*Look at the car. Sam has washed it.*

### The Present Perfect Simple is used:

- for past events which have a connection to the present.  
**The exact time is not mentioned.**  
*I've found a new job.*
- for events that began in the past but are still happening in the present.  
*I have lived in Athens for ten years. (I still live in Athens.)*
- with **today, this morning/week**, etc. if these periods of time are not finished at the time of speaking.  
*Helen has called me twice this morning. (the morning is not over yet.)*

### The Present Perfect Progressive is used:

- for temporary situations.  
*He has been staying with friends for two months, but now he wants to get his own place.*
- to emphasise the duration of an action.  
*I've been calling him since ten o'clock.*
- for actions that may or may not be finished.  
*Sam has been washing the car for an hour.*

### The Past Simple is used:

- for completed past events which are not connected to the present. **The exact time is mentioned.**  
*I found a new job three months ago.*
- for events that took place for a certain period of time in the past but are over at the time of speaking.  
*Susan lived in Manchester for three years but now she lives in Liverpool.*
- with **today, this morning/week**, etc. if these periods of time are finished.  
*Helen called me twice this morning. (the morning is over.)*





## B Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Simple, the Present Perfect Progressive or the Past Simple.

1. **Jack:** I think I have lost (lose) my sunglasses.  
I have been looking (look) for them since noon, but I can't find them. And they were (be) very expensive!

**Amanda:** I have lost (lose) three pairs so far and I have learnt (learn) my lesson. I only buy cheap sunglasses now... Maybe you left (leave) them at Harry's house this morning.

**Jack:** No, I have already asked (already, ask) him.



2. **Debbie:** This is the most interesting book I have ever read (ever, read).

**Pat:** Where did you get (get) that book?  
I have been trying (try) to find it for months now!

**Debbie:** My brother gave (give) it to me for my birthday.

3. **Tanya:** I'm afraid Tom isn't here. He has been delivering (deliver) newspapers since 7:00 a.m., but he should be back soon.

**Peter:** He left/has left (leave) three messages on my answering machine but I'm not home, so please tell him to call me at my grandparents' house. I have been staying (stay) with them for the past two weeks, but I forgot (forget) to tell Tom when I last saw (see) him.

## C Rephrase the following sentences using the word in brackets.

1. Lucy is swimming in the pool. She started swimming half an hour ago. (for)

Lucy has been swimming in the pool for half an hour.

2. Dave has had this computer for three weeks. (ago)

Dave bought/got this computer three weeks ago.

3. They went to the supermarket at 6:00 p.m. Now, it's 7:00 p.m.. (for)

They have been at the supermarket for an hour.

4. It's 10:00 a.m. and I'm about to start writing my fourth letter. (so far)

It's 10:00 a.m. and I have written three letters so far.

5. I started training five months ago. Now, it's August. (since)

I have been training since March.



**D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

1. He has never driven another car since he started driving.

**only** This is the only car he has driven since he started driving.

2. The last time I watched TV was a week ago.

**for** I haven't watched TV for a week.

3. When did he start working for this company?

**been** How long has he been working for this company?

4. This is her second visit to the dentist this month.

**time** This is the second time she has visited the dentist this month.

5. Let's not go to a café as I had some coffee earlier.

**already** Let's not go to a café as I have already had/drunk some coffee.

6. Ray still doesn't know which car to buy.

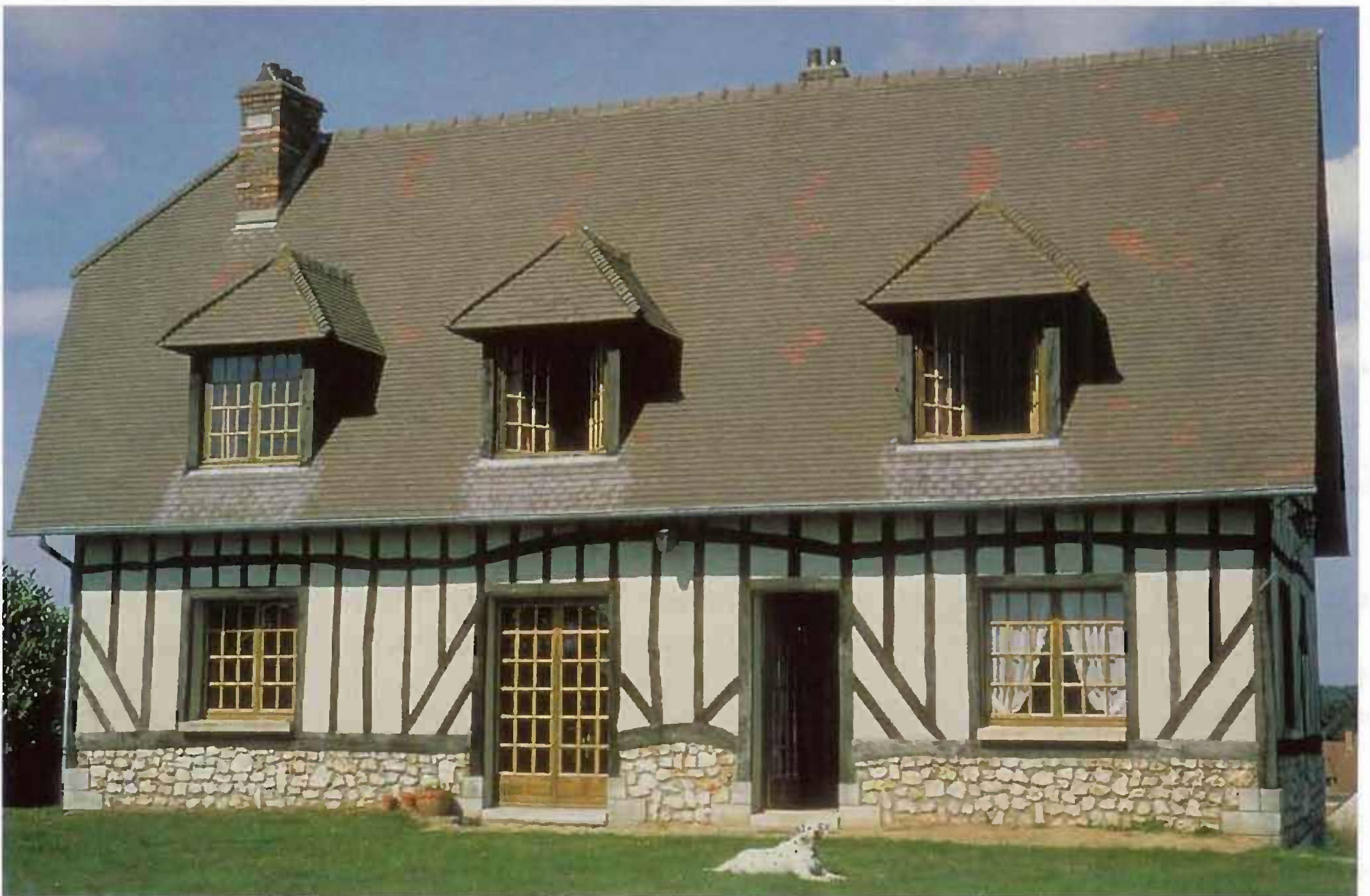
**made** Ray (still) hasn't made up his mind which car to buy.

7. We have never experienced such a cold winter in Greece before.

**ever** It's the coldest winter we have ever experienced in Greece.

8. We bought this house two years ago.

**had** We have had this house for two years.





## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

<b>call off:</b>	cancel sth
<b>carry on:</b>	continue doing sth
<b>carry out:</b>	perform a task
<b>catch up (with):</b>	(1) reach sb by walking/ running faster (2) reach the same level as sb

1. Mike has been ill for a week. He will have to work really hard to catch up with his class.
2. The match was called off due to bad weather.
3. He will never catch up with me. I'm a far better runner.
4. After the earthquake, the islanders had to carry on with their everyday lives.
5. Studies carried out by the World Health Organization indicate that cities are getting much noisier.

### B Complete using prepositions.

1. We were all shocked by the news of the bomb exploding in the city.
2. Children are usually frightened of the dark.
3. All the students were anxious about their exam results.
4. Elen was worried about her grandmother's health.
5. He was puzzled by his colleague's unusual behaviour.
6. Tom was ashamed of what he had done and asked for forgiveness.
7. The writer was surprised by/at the critic's review of his book.
8. The children are afraid of the neighbour's dogs.
9. Tell me more about the country you come from. I'm curious about it.
10. Don't be shy of having your picture taken.
11. She's scared of making the wrong decision.
12. I'm never jealous of people who are wealthy because I'm happy with my life.

### C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

<b>mention</b> (v):	refer to or speak about sth briefly or incidentally
<b>report</b> (v):	inform some authority about sth that has happened
<b>express</b> (v):	show what you think or feel by saying or doing sth

1. We decided to report the robbery to the police.
2. I can't find the words to express how I feel.
3. How could you forget? I mentioned it to you last night.

<b>result</b> (n):	the outcome of an action or situation
<b>effect</b> (of sth on sth else) (n):	(1) the change that sth causes to sth else (2) the power to influence or produce a result
<b>consequence</b> (n):	the result or effect of sth (usually unpleasant)

4. Pollution has a very harmful effect on our health.
5. If you don't take our advice, you'll have to face the consequences.
6. Did you get your exam results?



# unit | 04 | Future Time

## The Future "Will" is used to express:

- a decision one makes at the moment of speaking.  
*It's getting cold; I'll close the windows.*
- predictions or personal opinions about the future, usually with *perhaps* or *probably*, or after the verbs **believe, expect, think, be sure, be afraid**, etc.  
*I think Arsenal will lose this match.*  
*I'm sure John will be very happy to meet you.*
- requests and offers.  
*Will you do the ironing for me, please?*  
*I'll take you to the airport tomorrow.*
- promises, threats, warnings, hopes, fears, invitation, refusal, willingness, determination.  
*Stop making so much noise or the neighbours will get angry.*

## "Be going to" is used to express:

- predictions based on evidence.  
*The sun is shining; it's going to be a lovely day.*
- plans or decisions that have already been made.  
*I'm going to study archaeology this year.*  
*She doesn't like Alan, so she is not going to invite him to her party.*

## The Future Progressive is used to express:

- actions that will be in progress at a specific time in the future.  
*This time tomorrow I'll be flying to Rome.*
- future actions which have already been planned or are part of a routine.  
*The president will be visiting Egypt next month.*  
*Tom won't come with us on Sunday; he will be playing basketball (=he does so every Saturday).*
- a polite request about someone's plans, especially if we want to ask for a favour.  
*Will you be using your computer tomorrow?*

### Time Expressions

next week/month/year, etc., tomorrow, in a week/month/year, etc.

## The Future Perfect Simple is used:

- for actions which will have been completed before a specific point of time in the future or before another action in the future (the verb describing the second action is in the **Present Simple**).  
*By dinner time I will have written all the letters.*  
*I guess John will have stopped working by the time we arrive.*

### Time Expressions

by, by the time, before

## The Future Perfect Progressive is used:

- to show the duration of an action up to a certain point of time in the future. The action may continue further.  
*By midnight we will have been flying for seven hours.*

### Time Expressions

by

### note

After the words **after, as long as, as soon as, before, by the time, if, provided, providing, until, while, when**, etc. we use the Present Simple, not the Future "Will".  
*Give my regards to her when she calls.*

We can also use the Present Perfect Simple after the above words to emphasise that an action will be completed in the future.

*He'll come as soon as he has finished studying.*



## Phrases with future meaning

The following expressions indicate that an event will happen very soon.

be (just) about to	+ infinitive	<i>They are about to leave.</i>
be bound to		<i>You're bound to get there on time.</i>
be to		<i>We are to meet tomorrow at 10:00.</i>
be on the point of + -ing		<i>Susan is on the point of collapsing.</i>
no matter who/what/which/where/when	+ present tense	<i>No matter where we go, we'll have a great time.</i>
whatever/whoever/whenever/wherever		<i>Whatever you decide to do, I'll support you.</i>
be due to + infinitive	is used for schedules and timetables.	<i>The plane is due to land in half an hour.</i>

## Grammar Practice

**A** Put the verbs in brackets into the Future "Will", the Future Progressive, the Future Perfect Simple or the Future Perfect Progressive.

- Kathy can't come shopping with us on Saturday morning. She will be having (have) a French lesson.
- Jenny, Ms Kingsley will contact (contact) you as soon as the documents are ready. Will you let (let) me know when she does?
- At lunchtime tomorrow you will be entertaining (entertain) your friends from Mexico, so I will ring (ring) you later on in the evening.
- Will you be going (go) to the concert by car? I'd really appreciate a lift.
- I will have painted (paint) the living room by the time Dad comes home. He'll be so surprised!
- I hope I will have interviewed (interview) all the applicants by the time the manager arrives.
- Do you think that they will have completed (complete) the construction of the tunnel by the end of this year?
- Call David. He will have arrived (arrive) home by now.
- By the time we reach Gstaad, we will have been driving (drive) for twelve hours.
- I will have been studying (study) for three hours by 8:00 pm.







## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

<b>come across:</b>	find sth by chance
<b>come along/on:</b>	(1) hurry up (2) encourage sb to do sth
<b>come into:</b>	inherit (money, property or a title)
<b>come round:</b>	(1) to stop by, visit (2) recover consciousness
<b>come up with:</b>	think of and suggest sth (plan, idea, etc.)

- Come along/on ! We're going to miss the bus.
- When did Jane come up with this idea? It's perfect!
- If you come across that CD, could you buy it for me?
- Simon came into a lot of money after his grandfather's death.
- It took the boxer five minutes to come round after he was knocked out.

### B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### MISSING THE HUSTLE AND BUSTLE

My father was a police inspector, my mother a teacher. Their decision to move to a small town when I was a child changed my life. It was a very peaceful place and of course living there meant that I had much more freedom to go wherever I pleased. The people were friendly but I missed my close friends, my school and the noisy city I had lived in.

As I grew up, I realised that there wasn't much for a young person to do there, except rush into marriage. When I left, my parents were sad, but they realised that staying there would only make me miserable.

The big city I live in now is not very far away, so I can visit my parents frequently and have the best of both worlds.

**INSPECT, TEACH**  
**DECIDE**  
**PEACE**  
**FREE, FRIEND**  
**NOISE**

**MARRY**  
**MISERY**  
**FREQUENT**

### C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

**wait (for sb/sth)** (v): spend time doing little while expecting sth to happen or sb to arrive

**look forward to (doing) sth** (v): anticipate sth to happen

**expect** (v): believe that sth will happen, anticipate

**boast of/about sth** (v): talk about sth in a way that shows excessive pride

**praise sb for sth** (v): express approval of or admiration for sb's achievements or qualities

- What time do you expect the guests to arrive?
- I'm looking forward to visiting Spain.
- Can you wait for me, John?
- People who boast about their own achievements aren't usually popular.
- The teacher praised her students for their good exam results.



## Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. The meeting will start when everyone \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. will arrive                       b. arrives                      c. is arriving                      d. will have arrived
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ Betty since she moved to our neighbourhood.  
 a. have known                      b. had known                      c. are knowing                      d. knew
3. The students were tired. They \_\_\_\_\_ hard all morning.  
 a. had been working                      b. worked                      c. have been working                      d. had worked
4. By this time next month, the builders \_\_\_\_\_ the house.  
a. will complete                      b. will be completing                       c. will have completed                      d. will have been completing
5. "This time next week we \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach!"  
"I can't wait!"  
a. are lying                       b. will be lying                      c. will have lain                      d. will have been lying
6. Mark \_\_\_\_\_ about my cooking! It's so annoying!  
a. has always complained                      b. was always complaining                       c. is always complaining                      d. had always complained
7. Sue \_\_\_\_\_ TV when she heard a knock on the door.  
a. watched                       b. was watching                      c. has been watching                      d. has watched
8. By two o'clock, he \_\_\_\_\_ on the drums for three hours. I hope he stops soon!  
 a. will have been practising                      b. will be practising                      c. has been practising                      d. is practising
9. Yesterday, I met an old school friend who I \_\_\_\_\_ for years.  
a. didn't see                      b. haven't seen                      c. had seen                       d. hadn't seen
10. "The phone's ringing!"  
"I \_\_\_\_\_ it!"  
a. get                       b. will get                      c. will be getting                      d. got
11. Nancy \_\_\_\_\_ since she came from work.  
 a. has been sleeping                      b. is sleeping                      c. slept                      d. had slept
12. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ his wallet last week.  
a. was losing                      b. had lost                      c. has lost                       d. lost
13. You \_\_\_\_\_ the wine after the meat is cooked.  
a. are adding                      b. will add                       c. add                      d. have added
14. I \_\_\_\_\_ two letters so far.  
 a. have written                      b. wrote                      c. had written                      d. have been writing
15. When we finally got to the airport, the plane \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. has already landed                      b. landed already                      c. already landed                       d. had already landed

**B** Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- Lucy first started playing tennis in May.  
been Lucy has been playing tennis since May.
- I had never read a better book by that author.  
best It was the best book I had ever read by that author.
- Scott, is this your wallet?  
belong Scott, does this wallet belong to you?
- This is Pete's third attempt at climbing Mount Everest.  
time This is the third time Pete has attempted to climb Mount Everest.
- We've arranged to leave by train tomorrow morning.  
are We are leaving/are going to leave by train tomorrow morning.
- By the time my favourite TV show starts, I will have dinner ready.  
finished By the time my favourite TV show starts, I will have finished cooking dinner.
- It's ages since she last ate spaghetti.  
for She hasn't eaten spaghetti for ages.
- They realised that they had taken the wrong turning after driving for an hour.  
had They had driven/had been driving for an hour before they realised that they had taken the wrong turning.

## Vocabulary Practice

**A** Choose the correct answers.

- I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ her. She is a fast runner.  
a. come up with       b. catch up with      c. bring back      d. get away
- When his aunt died, Luke \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.  
a. came along      b. came across       c. came into      d. came round
- I'm really worried \_\_\_\_\_ the boys. They haven't come back yet and it's almost midnight.  
a. for       b. about      c. of      d. with
- Are you afraid \_\_\_\_\_ the dark?  
a. with      b. by      c. at       d. of
- We \_\_\_\_\_ the theft to the insurance company the following morning.  
a. replied      b. expressed      c. mentioned       d. reported
- I had to \_\_\_\_\_ Jerry some money as he didn't have any to get home.  
a. let       b. lend      c. borrow      d. gain
- Samantha is \_\_\_\_\_ good results in her examination.  
a. looking forward       b. expecting      c. waiting      d. wanting
- He \_\_\_\_\_ a lot about the money he makes.  
 a. boasts      b. praises      c. says      d. mentions
- I felt awful when I realised that I couldn't pay for the meal because I had \_\_\_\_\_ my wallet.  
 a. forgotten      b. left      c. let      d. lent
- Do you believe in love \_\_\_\_\_ first sight?  
a. with      b. from       c. at      d. by
- This is a lousy excuse! Couldn't you \_\_\_\_\_ something better?  
a. break up       b. come up with      c. carry on      d. ask for
- She \_\_\_\_\_ the wedding at the last minute.  
 a. called off      b. carried out      c. asked out      d. came into



13. A thief \_\_\_\_\_ our house last month and stole all of my mother's jewellery.  
 (a) broke into                      b. broke in                      c. broke down                      d. broke up
14. You could \_\_\_\_\_ drive me to my house. It really isn't that far.  
 a. at last                      (b) at least                      c. at present                      d. at the same time
15. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ seeing Sally again after two years.  
 a. expecting                      b. waiting                      c. looking                      (d) looking forward to

### B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. This is a very valuable grandfather clock.                      **VALUE**
2. Katie's illness has kept her away from school for a week.                      **ILL**
3. Nowadays most teenagers have the freedom to do whatever they please.                      **FREE**
4. A good friendship will last a lifetime.                      **FRIEND**
5. An inspection of the building was made and it was declared safe.                      **INSPECT**
6. Naturally, we are concerned about our son's progress at school.                      **NATURE**
7. The children were playing noisily in the garden.                      **NOISE**
8. The children looked unhappy and miserable.                      **MISERY**

### C Choose the correct answers.



Last weekend, my friend Anne and I decided to take a road trip. (1) \_\_\_\_\_, we were going to take Anne's car, but it had (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a couple of days before. As a (3) \_\_\_\_\_, we decided to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ one for 30 dollars a day. We both took Monday off from (5) \_\_\_\_\_, so that we could have a full four days. Our goal was to drive from New York to Washington D.C., and back. The trip itself was great. The weather was beautiful, and we (6) \_\_\_\_\_ many interesting places along the way. There was a lot to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ in

Washington, so we spent two days there. The sad thing was that I had forgotten my camera, even though Anne had specifically (8) \_\_\_\_\_ that she didn't have one to bring along. So, we bought lots of postcards to remind us of our trip. Even though we arrived back a bit tired on Monday night, the trip was well worth it!

1. a. At present                      4. a. hire  
 (b) At first                      (b) rent  
 c. At least                      c. let  
 d. At most                      d. buy
2. a. broken up                      5. a. job  
 b. broken into                      b. task  
 c. broken in                      (c) work  
 (d) broken down                      d. duty
3. (a) result                      6. (a) came across  
 b. consequence                      b. came along  
 c. effect                      c. came into  
 d. reason                      d. came round
7. a. look  
 b. notice  
 (c) see  
 d. watch
8. (a) mentioned  
 b. reported  
 c. expressed  
 d. told



# unit | 05 | Infinitive

## Infinitive Forms

Time Reference	Forms	Active	Passive
Present / Future	Present Infinitive, simple	<i>(to) give</i>	<i>(to) be given</i>
	Present Infinitive, progressive	<i>(to) be giving</i>	—
Past	Perfect Infinitive, simple	<i>(to) have given</i>	<i>(to) have been given</i>
	Perfect Infinitive, progressive	<i>(to) have been giving</i>	—

### note

**Negative Form:** not + infinitive

## Full Infinitive (to + infinitive)

The full infinitive is used:	Examples
1. to express <b>purpose</b>	<i>She went to the post office to collect her parcel.</i>
2. after certain <b>verbs</b> (as their object): afford    decide    hesitate    plan    remind agree    demand    hope    prepare    seem appear    deserve    learn    pretend    swear arrange    expect    manage    promise    tend ask    fail    mean    refuse    threaten beg    forget    need    regret    volunteer claim    happen    offer    remember    want, etc.	<i>She pretended not to have seen him.</i> <i>Unemployment levels tend to rise in Europe.</i> <i>They volunteered to help us.</i>
3. after the <b>object</b> of certain verbs: advise    challenge    force    order    teach allow    convince    hire    permit    tell ask    encourage    instruct    persuade    urge beg    expect    invite    remind    want cause    forbid    need    require    warn, etc.	<i>My friend invited me to join them.</i> <i>They persuaded her not to see him again.</i>

### note

Help + object can take either a full or bare infinitive.  
*Could you help me (to) pack my suitcases?*

4. after verbs followed by a <b>question word</b> (who, what, which, where, how, <b>but not</b> why): ask    forget    remember    understand decide    know    show    wonder, etc. explain    learn    tell	<i>Have you decided where to go for Christmas?</i> <i>Do you remember what to buy?</i> <i>Could you show me how to use your computer?</i>
5. after certain <b>adjectives</b> : afraid    careful    lucky    relieved    surprised amazed    determined    pleased    sad    upset anxious    glad    prepared    shocked    willing, etc. astonished    happy    ready    sorry	<i>Jack was relieved to hear his son was out of danger.</i> <i>You have to be careful not to say anything insulting.</i>



6. after: <b>would like, would love, would prefer</b>	<i>I would prefer to be on holiday instead of working.</i>
7. after: <b>the first/second/next/last/best</b> , etc., instead of a relative clause	<i>If anything happens, you'll be the first to know. Joan was the last to hear about the accident.</i>
8. after certain <b>nouns</b> (pleasure, shock, etc.)	<i>It was a great pleasure to meet you.</i>
9. after <b>some, any, no</b> and their compounds	<i>I'll make you something to eat. He doesn't have anywhere to stay.</i>
10. after the following structures: • <b>it + be + adjective</b> ( + <b>of/for</b> + <b>object</b> )  • <b>so + adjective + as</b> , in formal or polite requests	<i>It's very comforting to listen to your voice. It was very kind of her to call. It is necessary for him to have a rest. Would you be so kind as to help me with these suitcases?</i>
11. with <b>too/enough</b> : too + adjective/adverb } negative meaning enough + noun } adjective/adverb + enough } positive meaning	<i>This shirt is too large for me to wear it. This shirt is large enough for me to wear it.</i>
12. after <b>only</b> , for emphasis or expressing disappointment	<i>He passed the written test only to fail the oral exam.</i>
13. at the beginning of the sentence: as a <b>subject</b> or in <b>fixed expressions</b> (to be honest, to tell you the truth, to begin with, etc.)	<i>To lend money is a risky business. To be honest, I didn't want to meet him.</i>

### Bare Infinitive (infinitive without to)

The bare infinitive is used:	Examples
1. after most <b>modal verbs</b> (can/could, may/might, will/would, shall/should, must, etc.)	<i>You should wake up earlier in the morning.</i>
2. after: <b>would rather, would sooner, had better</b>	<i>Jane would rather go to California by plane. You'd better hurry up, we're late again!</i>
3. after the verbs <b>hear, let, listen to, make, notice, observe, see, watch</b> , etc. These verbs (except for <i>let</i> ) take the full infinitive in the passive voice.	<i>Will you let me go to the party tonight? She heard him come in. He was seen to open the door. He was made to do some extra work.</i>
4. In the following structures: <b>Why...?/ Why not...?</b> (for suggestions and advice)	<i>Why not have another drink? Why walk when I could give you a lift? My son does nothing all day but watch TV.</i>
do + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{anything} \\ \text{everything} \\ \text{nothing} \end{array} \right\} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{but} \\ \text{except} \end{array} \right\} + \text{infinitive}$	

### Perfect Infinitive

The perfect infinitive refers to actions or events that have already finished.

The perfect infinitive is used:	Examples
1. with <b>modal verbs</b> (could, would, may, might, must, etc.)	<i>He could have studied more, but he didn't.</i>
2. after verbs such as: <b>appear, claim, expect, hope, happen, pretend, promise, seem</b> , etc.	<i>He appears to have left the country.</i>
3. after certain verbs in the <b>passive voice</b> (personal construction): believe      say      think consider      suppose      understand, etc.	<i>She is believed to have secretly met the Prime Minister.</i>







**C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

1. It seems that Mike isn't enjoying himself tonight.

**appears** Mike appears not to be enjoying himself tonight.

2. At the wedding, she was constantly gossiping about the other guests.

**nothing** At the wedding, she did nothing but/except gossip about the other guests.

3. Learning that no one was hurt during the fire was a great relief.

**relieved** We were (greatly) relieved to learn that no one was hurt during the fire.

4. When they arrived at the airport, they discovered that they had left their tickets at home.

**only** They arrived at the airport only to discover that they had left their tickets at home.

5. The kidnappers forced the woman to get into the car.

**made** The kidnappers made the woman get into the car.

6. Dr Thompson studied the symptoms of the disease before anyone else did.

**first** Dr Thompson was the first to study the symptoms of the disease.

7. People say that he has travelled the world.

**said** He is said to have travelled the world.

8. Neither of them was old enough to have a driving licence.

**too** Both of them were too young to have a driving licence.

## Vocabulary Practice

**A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.**

**get along/on**

**(with sb):** form or have a friendly relationship with sb

**get away:**

escape

**get away with:** go unpunished for doing sth wrong or risky

**get by:** continue to live in spite of difficulties

**get off:** (1) take yourself off a horse or bike (2) leave a plane, train, boat, etc.

**get on:** (1) place yourself on a horse or bike (2) enter a plane, train, boat, etc.

**get on with:** continue doing sth, especially after an interruption or in spite of difficulties

**get over:** (1) recover from an illness (2) overcome a problem

- I find it difficult to get by on the money I earn.
- Wendy is very easy-going and can get along/on with anyone.
- The boy got up and kindly offered his seat to an old man.
- It took Sue two weeks to get over the flu.
- If I don't get on with this work, I'll never finish it.
- Joe ran as fast as he could and managed to get on the bus just before it left.
- The thief got away before the police arrived.
- Sue, could you help your little brother get off his bike? He doesn't want to ride it anymore!
- She always gets away with not doing any housework! It's just not fair!



**B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.**

<b>for ages:</b>	for a very long time
<b>for a change:</b>	doing sth different than usual
<b>(take sth/sb)</b>	
<b>for granted:</b>	accept sth as normal without thinking about it
<b>for hire/sale:</b>	available to be hired, rented/available to be sold
<b>for a while:</b>	for a short period of time

1. The house was for sale, so we decided to buy it.
2. Red is not a colour I would usually wear, but I think I'll buy that red dress for a change.
3. We haven't seen the Johnsons for ages! More than ten years, I think.
4. I'll be gone for a while. You won't have to wait long for me.
5. Nowadays, many children take everything for granted.

**C Complete using the correct form of the verbs given.****THE ART OF ADVERTISING**

In our life/lives we are constantly bombarded by advertisements whose role is to make products attractive enough so that people will want to buy them immediately.

There has been a lot of discussion on the powerful effects of advertising. Are ads really useful? Are they truthful? Do they give us a realistic idea of the product? People are rarely in agreement on any of these questions, but the fact is that ads are helpful in letting people know the wide variety of goods available.

**LIVE, ADVERTISE**  
**ATTRACT**  
**IMMEDIATE**  
**DISCUSS**  
**USE, TRUE, REAL**  
**AGREE**  
**HELP**

**D Complete using the words given.**

<b>debt</b> (n):	amount of money that you owe to a person or a bank
<b>loan</b> (n):	money that you borrow (usually from a bank)
<b>donation</b> (n):	contribution to a charity or other organisation
<b>fine</b> (n):	punishment in which sb has to pay a sum of money because they have done sth wrong or broken a rule
<b>charge</b> (n):	amount of money sb has to pay for a service or to buy sth
<b>tip</b> (n):	extra money given to sb (e.g. a waiter, porter, etc.) in order to thank them for their service
<b>change</b> (n):	(1) coins (2) money that you receive when you pay for sth with more money than it costs because you do not have the exact amount of money
<b>currency</b> (n):	the money used in a particular country
<b>profit</b> (n):	money sb gains when they are paid more for sth than it costs them to make, get or do
<b>income</b> (n):	money sb earns or receives

<b>bill</b> (n):	a written statement of money that you owe for goods or services
<b>receipt</b> (n):	a piece of paper that you get from sb as confirmation that they have received money or goods from you

1. The magistrate imposed a £100 fine on the man for throwing litter on the street.
2. The income Sandra earns allows her to live very comfortably.
3. I like to make donations to worthwhile causes.
4. Do you make a large profit out of the jewellery you sell?
5. If I don't get good service in a restaurant, I never leave a tip.
6. Come back, sir! You forgot your change.
7. The Jones took out a loan to buy a new car.
8. There's no extra charge for delivery.
9. What currency is used in Austria?
10. The national debt is always increasing and as a result the cost of living rises.
11. I must pay this electricity bill by next week.
12. Make sure you get a receipt for the furniture you buy.



# unit | 06 | -ing form

## -ing Forms

	Form	Affirmative	Negative
Present	verb + -ing	<i>giving</i>	<i>not giving</i>
Perfect	having + past participle	<i>having given</i>	<i>not having given</i>

## Use

The **-ing form** is used:

1. as a **noun** (subject or object of a verb)

### Examples

*Swimming is a very good form of exercise.*

*I have some shopping to do this afternoon.*

2. after a **preposition** or **verb + preposition**

*Touch your toes without bending your knees.*

*Helen is excited about studying abroad.*

3. after certain **verbs** (as their object):

admit	dislike	mention	recall
appreciate	enjoy	mind	recommend
avoid	fancy	miss	resent
consider	finish	postpone	resist
delay	imagine	practise	risk
deny	involve	prefer	suggest
discuss	keep (on)	quit	tolerate, etc.

*Tony dislikes driving small cars.*

*Would you mind waiting for a moment?*

*Have you finished reading that book?*

*He avoided answering my question.*

*I prefer swimming to playing football.*

*(general preference)*

*I prefer to watch TV at night. (specific preference)*

*I prefer to start exercising rather than go on a diet.*

*Would you mind if I opened the door?*

*He never admitted that he was wrong.*

- **prefer** can also take a full infinitive.

prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive

- **mind** can also go with an if-clause.

Some of these verbs can also take a that-clause.

4. after verbs or expressions with **to**:

be/get accustomed to	look forward to
be/get used to	object to
in addition to	take to

*The children were not used to living in the country.*

*They are looking forward to travelling abroad.*

5. after certain **expressions**:

as well as	it's no good/use
be in favour of	it's worth
can't stand/help	there's no chance of
feel like	there's no point in
have difficulty (in)	what's the point of...?
how about	what's the use of...?

*As well as going to the cinema, he likes reading science fiction stories.*

*I don't feel like going out tonight.*

*She can't help crying whenever she peels onions.*

6. after the verbs **need**, **want**, **require**, etc. with a passive meaning.

*My car needs repairing. (=My car needs to be repaired.)*

7. after the verb **go**, indicating physical activities

*We are planning to go skiing this weekend.*

8. after the verbs

catch	} + object
find	
leave	

*She caught him stealing some money from the drawer.*

*I found her sleeping on the sofa.*

*They left me waiting in the rain for half an hour.*

9. after:

- be busy
- spend/waste + expression of money/time

*She is busy feeding the baby.*

*Every day they spend two hours studying French.*

*You shouldn't waste your time watching soap operas.*



## Infinitive or -ing form with no difference in meaning

- The verbs **like, love, hate, begin, start, continue, intend, prefer, can't bear**, etc. can take either a full infinitive or -ing with little or no difference in meaning:

*Tim loves playing/to play tennis.*

### notes

- like + -ing**: we enjoy something.  
*Mary likes reading poetry.*
- like + full infinitive**: we think that something is a good idea.  
*I like to have my tyres checked whenever I buy petrol.*
- begin, start**: usually the -ing form goes with simple tenses and the infinitive with progressive tenses (to avoid having two -ing forms together).  
*It started raining an hour ago.*      *Be quiet! The lecturer is beginning to speak!*
- advise, allow, encourage, permit, recommend, require** + -ing object + full infinitive  
*The manager does not allow smoking in the office.*  
*The manager does not allow anyone to smoke in the office.*

## Infinitive or -ing form with different meanings

- Some other verbs can take either -ing or infinitive, but the meaning is different.

**try + -ing**: make an experiment.

*If you want to get rid of your sore throat, try drinking something hot.*

**try + full infinitive**: make an effort.

*I'll try to persuade her to come with us, but I don't think she will change her mind.*

**remember**  
**forget**  
**regret** + -ing We refer to something that has already happened.

*I remember visiting Berlin in 1982.*

**remember**  
**forget**  
**regret** + full infinitive we remember/forget/regret something before doing it.

*Don't forget to go to the supermarket.*

**go on + -ing**: the action continues.

*He was so fascinated by the book that he went on reading it for hours.*

**go on + full infinitive**: the action changes.

*When she finished school, she went on to study Medicine.*

**stop + -ing**: the action was stopped and not repeated.

*They had a major argument and stopped talking to each other.*

**stop + full infinitive**: the action was interrupted, but probably continued afterwards.

*I was writing a letter, but I stopped to answer the phone.*

**see**      **notice**  
**hear**      **watch**  
**smell**      **observe**  
**feel**      **listen to, etc.** + -ing for actions which are incomplete or still in progress.

*I was walking past the reception hall when I saw him playing the piano. (=I witnessed a part of the action.)*

**see**      **watch**  
**hear**      **observe**  
**feel**      **listen to**  
**notice, etc.** + bare infinitive for complete actions.

*We saw him play the piano at a concert. (=I witnessed the whole action, from the beginning to the end.)*

**smell** can take only an -ing form.

*He could smell something burning.*

### notes

- The subject of the -ing form can be different from the subject of the verb. In this case, it can be a **noun**, an **object pronoun**, a **possessive adjective** or a **noun in the possessive case**.  
*Angela objected to Michael/him/his/Michael's going on holiday to Japan.*
- excuse, forgive, pardon, prevent, understand** + possessive adjective + -ing form  
*Forgive my being so fussy, but everything has to be perfect.*
- prevent** + possessive adjective/case + -ing  
sb + from + doing sth  
*She tried to prevent his/her son's seeing Jane.*  
*She tried to prevent her son from seeing Jane.*



## Grammar Practice

### A Complete using the -ing form or the infinitive of the verbs in brackets.

- It was Mr Kent who suggested Mary's studying (study) abroad.
- You don't expect me to believe (believe) that you actually met Orlando Bloom, do you?
- The board of directors discussed the project, then went on to discuss (discuss) another topic.
- Why continue to work/working (work) there if you don't like your job?
- He regrets not going (not go) to see his grandfather in Paris.
- It's worth shopping (shop) at Stacey's as it's very cheap.
- My doctor doesn't permit me to eat (eat) red meat.
- Greg would rather spend (spend) the holidays skiing (ski) than sunbathe/sunbathing (sunbathe) on a beach somewhere.
- I was driving home when I noticed some workers putting up (put up) new traffic lights on Coronation Street.
- Anyone can get (get) used to living (live) a life of luxury.
- Will you quit complaining (complain)! It doesn't help (to) solve (solve) the problem.
- If you ever decide to sell (sell) your car, let me know (know).
- I would like you to water (water) the plants for me at the weekend.
- I clearly remember setting (set) my alarm clock before going (go) to bed last night.
- These plants require watering (water) every day.
- I resent you speaking (speak) to me like that! Have some respect!
- It would be good for the children to play (play) outdoors more often.
- I promised to take (take) Jill to the party, but I don't feel like going (go) now.
- Don't waste your time looking for (look for) the document. Ask Mr Gale.
- Please, excuse his leaving (leave) so early. He wants to catch up (catch up) with his studying (study).

### B Choose the sentence closest in meaning to the given one.

- Even though the telephone rang, he went on playing his violin.
  - He didn't continue to play the violin after the telephone rang.
  - He continued to play the violin despite the fact that the telephone was ringing.
  - He played the violin until the telephone rang.
- Jane forgot to put a stamp on the letter before she sent it.
  - Jane doesn't remember whether she put a stamp on the letter or not.
  - Jane put a stamp on the letter but she doesn't remember doing so.
  - Jane didn't put a stamp on the letter because she didn't remember to do so.
- Sue regrets selling her car.
  - Sue decided not to sell her car because it would be a mistake.
  - Sue may not sell her car.
  - Sue sold her car but now thinks it was a mistake.
- We stopped to buy a bottle of wine before visiting the Johnsons.
  - We bought a bottle of wine on our way to the Johnsons.
  - We no longer buy a bottle of wine before visiting the Johnsons.
  - We didn't buy a bottle of wine before visiting the Johnsons.
- Charlie couldn't sleep last night, so he tried listening to music but it didn't help.
  - Charlie made an effort to listen to music but he couldn't
  - Charlie thought listening to music might help but he was wrong.
  - Charlie listened to music and fell asleep.

**C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

- It wasn't easy for her to find a place to stay on the island.  
**difficulty** She had difficulty (in) finding a place to stay on the island.
- I can't wait to tell Karen the good news.  
**forward** I'm looking forward to telling Karen the good news.
- When they arrived home, their dog was sleeping in his kennel.  
**found** When they arrived home, they found their dog sleeping in his kennel.
- The teacher doesn't permit eating in the classroom.  
**anyone** The teacher doesn't permit anyone to eat in the classroom.
- She never appeared on TV again after the scandal became known.  
**stopped** She stopped appearing on TV after the scandal became known.
- The boys said that they hadn't broken the window.  
**denied** The boys denied breaking/having broken the window.
- He continued to interrupt me although I had told him to stop.  
**kept** He kept (on) interrupting me although I had told him to stop.
- The police will prevent his leaving the country.  
**from** The police will prevent him from leaving the country.

## Vocabulary Practice

**A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.**

**give away:** (1) reveal information or tell a secret  
(2) give sth to sb free of charge

**give back:** return sth you have borrowed or taken

**give in:** (1) admit that you are defeated

(2) do sth you didn't want to do  
**give out:** distribute some things among a number of people

**give up:** (1) quit an effort  
(2) resign from your job

- At the end of the year, the students had to give back all the books they had borrowed from the library.
- Jenny kept annoying her parents until they gave in to her demands.
- The rescue team gave up the search when it got dark.
- The chocolate company were giving away/out free chocolate bars during the promotion of their new product.
- Make sure you don't give away our hideout to anyone.

**B Complete using prepositions.**

- You shouldn't laugh at other people's misfortunes.
- My family were very proud of me when I won a scholarship to Oxford.
- Jenny is keen on Chinese food and cooks it at least twice a week.
- She is so fond of her dog that if anything happened to it, she'd be devastated.
- I'm very excited about my new job.
- Dave is interested in ancient Greek art, so he's thinking of taking a course in it.
- That girl is smiling at us. Do you know her?
- He has developed an interest in computers lately.
- Stop joking about such a serious subject!
- Are you pleased with the service provided by the staff?



### C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### SOMEONE TO WATCH US

There has been a significant reduction in police popularity in the last few years. That's why this week a public relations campaign is being launched to make people more sensitive to the role of the police officer. The ads will stress that police do more than just give motorists speeding tickets. They often act as unofficial social workers, visit schools and talk to students, familiarising them with traffic signs and warning them of various dangers. Being a police officer is risky, considering that every day they deal with criminals such as thieves and even murderers. In conclusion, the campaign wants to make the public realise that even though in some cases the police's approach may seem extreme, they cannot ignore the possibility of injury or even death while on duty.

**REDUCE**

**SENSE**

**MOTOR**

**VARY, RISK**

**CRIME**

**MURDER, CONCLUDE**

**POSSIBLE, DIE**

### D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

**crew** (n): people who work on a ship or aircraft

**staff** (n): people who work for a company or organisation, employees

**team** (n): group of people who work together or play a particular sport or game together

**employee** (n): a person who is paid to work for an organisation or for another person

**colleague** (n): a person you work with (at a professional job)

**client** (n): a person or organisation that receives a service from a professional person or another organisation in return for money

**customer** (n): a person who buys goods or services, especially from a shop

**guest** (n): sb who is visiting you or is at an event because they have been invited

**host** (n): sb who receives or entertains guests

**visitor** (n): sb who is visiting a person or a place

1. The hospital staff are on strike today.

2. I work for a law firm which has a lot of business people as clients.

3. My team played well but we lost the game.

4. I always buy my groceries from this shop. I am a regular customer here, so I expect good service.

5. There weren't many people on the plane; just the ten of us and the crew.

6. Whenever I need help at work, I can always rely on my colleagues.

7. Employers often complain that they can't find reliable employees/staff.

8. All visitors entering the factory must wear this card.

9. We had guests/visitors staying with us for ten days.

10. Our host provided us with a delicious meal.





# unit | 07 | Modal Verbs I

The modal verbs are: **can, could, may, might, must, will, would, shall, should, need, have to, ought to, used to.** **Need** may also be used as a main verb.

- Modal verbs** do not have all tense forms and
- are followed by a bare infinitive (present or perfect) except for **need** (when it is used as a main verb).
  - have the same form in all persons, except **have to** and **need** (when it is used as a main verb).
  - form questions and negations without auxiliary verbs, except **have to, used to** and **need** (when it is used as a main verb).

*You shouldn't leave your dog alone at home.*  
*You should have answered the phone.*  
*He needs to see the doctor.*  
*She must call the plumber immediately.*  
*Your car needs to be repaired/repairing.*  
*Can he repair his car?*  
*He cannot/can't repair his car.*  
*Do you have to see the doctor tomorrow?*  
*He doesn't need to get up early every day.*

Modal verbs have several meanings and uses.

## A. Ability

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
Can Be able to	Ability in the present or future.  <b>Can</b> is more commonly used for the present.	<i>Can you play the guitar?</i> <i>Mary will be able to play tennis after she has had some lessons.</i>
Could Was/were able to	<b>Could</b> expresses general ability in the past. <b>Was/were able to</b> express ability in a particular situation in the past. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Both can be used in negative sentences with no difference in meaning.</li> <li>• If the action was very difficult, we can use <b>managed to</b> instead of was/were able to.</li> </ul>	<i>He could swim at the age of five.</i> <i>George could swim, so he was able to save the boy from drowning.</i>  <i>He had a terrible accident but managed to survive.</i>

### note

Perfect and future tenses are formed only with be able to.  
*Nick hasn't been able to find a job yet.*  
*I think Sandra will be able to pick you up from the airport.*

## B. Possibility

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
can could may might	present infinitive (simple or progressive) + Possibility in the present or future. • <b>Can</b> is used when something is only sometimes possible	<i>Tina may/could/might (not) be at home now.</i> <i>George could be working late tonight.</i> <i>My brother can be very rude sometimes.</i>
could may might	perfect infinitive (simple or progressive) + Possibility in the past. • In negative sentences only <b>may not</b> and <b>might not</b> can be used to express possibility in the past (not <b>could not</b> )	<i>She could have left her umbrella in the classroom.</i> <i>I'm surprised to hear that Jim was not at the party. He might not have known about it.</i>
could might	present infinitive + For an event that was possible in the past but did not eventually happen.	<i>Be careful! You could have crashed into that tree!</i>



## note

Possibility can also be expressed with **be likely to**.

*Mary is likely to arrive late.*

*It is likely that Mary will arrive late.*

**May** and **might** expressing possibility cannot introduce interrogative sentences; **Do you think...?** and **Is it likely...?** are used instead.

*Do you think she might be at home?*

*Is it likely that she is still at home?*

### C. Probability

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
should ought to } + present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Probability in the present or future.	<i>There are plenty of flats available for rent in town. It should/ought to be easy enough to find a place to live.</i>
should ought to } + present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Something was expected to happen in the past, but either didn't happen or it is not certain if it happened.	<i>She has been working very efficiently lately; she should/ought to have been promoted.</i>

### D. Deduction

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
must + present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Positive deduction about the present or future. (We are fairly sure that something is true.)	<i>John must be at the dentist's; he was complaining about a toothache.</i>
can't + present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Negative deduction about the present or future. (We are almost certain that something is not true.)	<i>The 6:30 train to Liverpool can't be leaving yet; it's only 6:10.</i>
must + perfect infinitive (simple or progressive)	Positive deduction about the past.	<i>I can't find my glasses; I must have left them at the office.</i>
can't couldn't } + perfect infinitive (simple or progressive)	Negative deduction about the past.	<i>He can't/couldn't have been working yesterday; it was Sunday.</i>

### E. Permission

Asking for permission		Synonymous expressions
Can I (possibly)...? Could I...? May I...? Might I...?	Informal ↓ Formal	I wonder if I could/might... Is it all right if I...? Would it be possible for me to...? Do/Would you mind if I...?

### F. Requests

	Modal Verbs	Examples
Informal	can will	<i>Can you help me with the ironing? Will you please put out your cigarette?</i>
Polite/Formal	could, may would	<i>Could/May I have some coffee, please? Would you pass me the salt, please?</i>

## Grammar Practice

### A Complete using *can, can't, may, may not or must*.

1. Can you lend me your dictionary, please? I really need it.
2. Rebecca is eighteen months old. Now that she can walk, I have to watch out for her all the time!
3. Roger can't/may not come to the cinema with us because he has a lot of studying to do.
4. Jane must have bought a car. I saw her driving past my house this morning.
5. "I'm surprised that John didn't answer the door. I rang the doorbell many times."  
"He may/must have been sleeping."
6. Can/May I play a game on your computer?
7. They can't have walked all the way to town. It's too far!
8. Can/May I have some more red wine, please?
9. They can't afford to rent a summer house this year, so they've decided to go camping instead.
10. "I've got a temperature and a sore throat."  
"Oh, you must be feeling awful!"

### B Choose the correct answers.

1. Samantha \_\_\_\_\_ asleep because there's no light on in her room.  
(a.) must be                      b. can be                      c. can't be
2. I might \_\_\_\_\_ the test but I'm not sure. I haven't received the results yet.  
a. pass                      b. have been passed                      (c.) have passed
3. \_\_\_\_\_ I use your phone? I need to make an urgent phone call.  
a. Would                      b. Will                      (c.) Can
4. Tom is a talented musician. He should \_\_\_\_\_ the competition.  
a. won                      (b.) have won                      c. to win
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ have asked me first before you invited them.  
(a.) could                      b. may                      c. must
6. Don't make any plans for Tuesday because we \_\_\_\_\_ leave in the morning. I'll let you know tonight.  
a. can                      (b.) may                      c. would
7. Martha \_\_\_\_\_ have left. The lights in her house are on.  
(a.) can't                      b. shouldn't                      c. needn't
8. Mike leaves work at 3:00 p.m., so he \_\_\_\_\_ be home by now.  
a. can                      (b.) should                      c. would

### C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. There is a possibility that they won't visit us at the weekend.  
**might**                      They might not visit us at the weekend.
2. I'm sure it wasn't Tim who called you because I saw him outside.  
**been**                      It can't have been Tim who called you because I saw him outside.
3. I think you'll find the house easily, as the directions are quite clear.  
**ought**                      The directions are quite clear, so you ought to find the house easily.
4. I suppose Bruce has gone to the dentist since he had a terrible toothache.  
**have**                      Bruce must have gone to the dentist since he had a terrible toothache.



5. It's frustrating when you can't communicate with foreigners.

**able** It's frustrating when you aren't able to communicate with foreigners.

6. Perhaps you didn't buy that watch from this shop.

**could** You could have bought that watch from another shop.

7. Gary couldn't remember where he had put his wallet.

**was** Gary was not able to remember/was unable to remember where he had put his wallet.

8. Karen, I'd like you to help me with the washing-up.

**will** Karen, will you help me with the washing-up?

## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the phrasal verbs given.

<b>count on:</b>	rely on sb
<b>cut down (on):</b>	reduce the consumption of sth
<b>cut off:</b>	(1) stop providing sth (2) interrupt (e.g. a telephone conversation)
<b>cut up:</b>	cut sth into several smaller pieces
<b>end up:</b>	eventually arrive somewhere or find yourself in a situation, usually without planning to

- We hadn't paid the bill, so our water supply was cut off.
- I'm afraid I'll end up failing my exams if I don't study harder.
- I can never count on my brother for help in times of emergency.
- The doctor told the diabetic patient to cut down on sugar.
- The small boy's mother cut up his food into small pieces to enable him to eat it easily.

### B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

<b>by accident:</b>	not intentionally
<b>by air/rail/road/sea:</b>	travelling via that route
<b>by bus/car/plane/boat:</b>	travelling using a particular means of transport
<b>by chance:</b>	unexpectedly, not planning to
<b>by cheque:</b>	payment by means of cheque, not using cash
<b>by force:</b>	using violent action
<b>by heart:</b>	when you learn sth so well that you can remember it without having to read it
<b>by mistake:</b>	in error
<b>by oneself:</b>	alone; without help
<b>by phone/post:</b>	using that particular means of communication

- I don't have any cash on me, so I'll have to pay you by cheque.
- When I feel depressed, I like to sit by myself and read a book.
- The boys went across the lake by boat.
- I picked up the wrong keys by accident/by mistake and couldn't get into the office.
- The villagers wouldn't surrender, so the enemy soldiers took the village by force.
- The television advertisement says that you can order the book either by phone or by post.
- I learnt the poem off by heart to say at our end-of-year celebrations.
- Paul found the lost document completely by chance/by accident.
- When my brother bought his new car, he travelled everywhere by road only.

### C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

#### DON'T GIVE UP HOPE!

The economic crisis facing many countries today has created serious unemployment problems. Energetic young people, willing to work, are confronted by many difficulties when trying to find a job. Filling in countless application forms and hearing that they are unsuitable for the job because they don't have the right qualifications can be very disheartening. Finding a job seems just impossible. However, their disappointment shouldn't affect them nor make them give up. There is no straightforward solution other than patience and persistence.

**EMPLOY, ENERGY**  
**DIFFICULT**  
**APPLY, SUIT**  
**QUALIFY**  
**POSSIBLE**  
**DISAPPOINT**  
**SOLVE, PATIENT**

### D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

**travel** (v)(n): going from one place to another

**trip** (n): a short journey to a place and back again

**tour** (n): an organised trip during which you visit different places

**voyage** (n): a journey by ship or spacecraft

**cruise** (n): a holiday during which you travel on a ship

**flight** (n): a journey by plane

**journey** (n): travelling from one place to another

**route** (n): the way from one place to another



1. Our business trip to Brussels was productive and very pleasant.
2. What's the quickest route from your house to the city centre?
3. As soon as they arrived, they went on a tour of the city.
4. At the airport they told us that the flight to Rome had been cancelled.
5. Instead of going to an island, we decided to go on a luxury cruise around the Mediterranean.
6. People say that the safest and quickest way to travel is by aeroplane.
7. The journey from Boston to Montreal by car takes around five hours.
8. The old captain had spent his life making voyages to the Far East.



# unit 08 | Modal Verbs II

## A. Offers

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
will	To be willing to do something for someone else.	<i>I'll make you a sandwich if you are hungry.</i>
Will (you)...?	Informal offers and invitations.	<i>Will you have some tea?</i>
can could Can I..? Could I...? Shall I...? (= do you want me to...)	To offer to do something for someone else.	<i>I can / could lend you my umbrella. Is there anything I could do to help? Can I take your coat? Shall I post this letter for you?</i>
Would you like } prefer } + noun full infinitive	Polite or formal offers and invitations.	<i>Would you like a drink? Would you like me to help? Would you prefer to stay here with us? Would you rather have a cheese sandwich?</i>
Would you rather + bare infinitive		

## B. Suggestions

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
can	Informal suggestions	<i>We can go to the cinema, if you like.</i>
shall could	Polite or formal suggestions	<i>Shall we go shopping on Saturday? We could go for a swim in the afternoon.</i>

### note

Suggestions can also be expressed by:

**Let's + bare infinitive:** *Let's play tennis.*

**Why don't...?:** *Why don't we go for a walk?*

**How about** + noun: *How about some more coffee?*

**How about** + -ing form: *How about having a pizza for dinner?*

## C. Advice

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
shall	To ask for advice.	<i>Shall I dye my hair?</i>
should } ought to } + present infinitive (simple or progressive)	To ask for and give advice. To say what is generally right or wrong.	<i>I think you ought to see a doctor. You shouldn't be watching TV now; you should be studying.</i>
had better + bare infinitive	To give strong advice; it often expresses a threat or warning and is stronger than should/ought to.	<i>You'd better not argue with him. He'd better study harder if he wants to pass the exam.</i>
should } ought to } + perfect infinitive (simple or progressive)	Something should have been done but did not eventually happen.	<i>You shouldn't have lied to your parents. They ought to have informed us earlier.</i>



## D. Habits

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
used to	For past habits and situations that are no longer true. • Interrogative and negative sentences are formed with <b>did</b> .	<i>As a child, she used to be very difficult.</i> <i>Did they use to go fishing every Sunday?</i> <i>He didn't use to be so lazy.</i>
would + present infinitive	To describe past habits or a person's typical behaviour in the past.	<i>My grandmother would give me a bar of chocolate whenever I visited her.</i>
will	To describe a person's typical behaviour at present.	<i>When John is happy, he will sing all day.</i>

## E. Obligation - Necessity

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
must	Internal obligation: the speaker feels that he or someone else is obliged to do something.	<i>I must repair the roof before winter comes.</i> <i>You must get up early tomorrow.</i>
have to have got to	External obligation: it comes from facts, not from the speaker's opinion or feelings. • <b>have (got) to</b> can be used with adverbs of frequency.	<i>Policemen have to wear a uniform. (regulation)</i> <i>I've got to see my dentist tomorrow. (I have an appointment)</i> <i>Do you often have to work at weekends?</i>
need + <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— noun</li> <li>— -ing form</li> <li>— full infinitive</li> <li>— bare infinitive</li> </ul>	Necessity • When <b>need</b> is a main verb, interrogative and negative sentences are formed with <b>do/did</b> .	<i>She needs a new pair of gloves.</i> <i>This room needs painting.</i> <i>Do I need to take an umbrella?</i> <i>Need I take an umbrella?</i>
ought to	We remind someone of a duty or obligation.	<i>You ought to post these letters today.</i>

### note

**Must** is used only for the present; for the past and the future we use the forms of **have to**, expressing either internal or external obligation.

*He had to leave earlier yesterday.*

*They will soon have to tell him the truth.*

## F. Absence of necessity

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
don't have to haven't got to needn't don't need to	It is not necessary to do something.	<i>I don't have to/haven't got to cook dinner tonight; we are going to a restaurant.</i> <i>You needn't take your jacket. It isn't cold.</i> <i>He doesn't need to work that hard.</i>
needn't + perfect infinitive	Something was not necessary but it was done.	<i>You needn't have bought any magazines; I've got plenty.</i>
didn't need to + infinitive	Something was not necessary, and it is not clear if it was done or not.	<i>They didn't need to pay anything extra for the tour.</i>

## G. Prohibition

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
mustn't can't	Prohibition Not being allowed to do something.	<i>You mustn't enter this room.</i> <i>We can't use this equipment.</i>



## Grammar Practice

**A Complete the sentences using *can, should, would, mustn't, have to* or *don't have to*.**

- You mustn't smoke during take-off.
- Would you like some more tea?
- I'm afraid we have to cancel our skiing trip.
- Can I get you a drink?
- You don't have to do any cooking as I've already prepared something.
- You should have told her the truth earlier. She wouldn't have been so angry.
- I was a very good student and I would always do my homework.
- We can go swimming if you like. It's warm today.

**B Circle the correct answers.**

- Mary:** The children **must** / **need** new sports shoes, but I don't have time to go shopping.  
**Gary:** I **will** / **would** take them shopping if you want.
- You **shouldn't** / **mustn't** have been driving so carelessly! You could have killed someone.
- Mike:** Bill likes computer games. He **would** / **will** sit in front of his computer for hours.  
**Lucy:** Yes, but you **ought to** / **shall** encourage him to take up other activities as well.
- Tom:** I **need** / **must** hurry. I don't want to miss the bus and keep Sally waiting.  
**Jack:** You **mustn't** / **needn't** go by bus. I **could** / **should** drive you there if you like.
- Debbie:** **Why don't** / **How about** we buy him a silk tie?  
**Steve:** No, he doesn't wear ties. We **would** / **can** always get him a nice shirt, though.
- All the employees in this company **had to** / **must** work overtime every day next week.
- With a temperature like that, you **should** / **need** be in bed. You **needn't** / **shouldn't** be playing outside!
- I'm sorry, sir, but you **mustn't** / **can't** see Dr Brown today. You **have to** / **need** have an appointment.  
Is Tuesday afternoon OK?
- They **needn't** / **didn't need** to buy any more bread. There was plenty at home.
- Angela:** I **didn't need to** / **didn't use to** exercise regularly, but now that I have more free time, I do.  
**Peter:** What do you think... **Shall** / **Will** I start exercising?  
**Angela:** Sure, but you **had** / **would** better consult your doctor first.

**C Choose the correct answers.**

- I \_\_\_\_\_ buy a present for Mary because her birthday is on Saturday.  
(a) need to                      b. need                      c. am needing to                      d. will need
- You \_\_\_\_\_ have lied to your Dad about taking the car.  
(a) shouldn't                      b. couldn't                      c. mustn't                      d. can't
- Ann, you really \_\_\_\_\_ have studied a bit harder for the exam.  
a. must                      b. need to                      (c) ought to                      d. would
- Tom \_\_\_\_\_ to see a doctor. He's been ill for the past weeks.  
a. should                      (b) needs                      c. must                      d. ought to
- We \_\_\_\_\_ worry about getting to the airport on time; it's really close by.  
a. couldn't                      b. ought not to                      c. can't                      (d) needn't

**D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

- You were wrong to drive through the red light.  
**should** You should not have driven through the red light.
- Our children were never in the habit of telling lies.  
**used** Our children never used to tell lies.
- Taking photographs inside the museum is strictly prohibited.  
**not** You must not take photographs inside the museum.
- You are not obliged to come if you have something else to do.  
**have** You don't have to come if you have something else to do.
- Shall I do the shopping for you?  
**like** Would you like me to do the shopping for you?
- It wasn't necessary for you to wake up so early.  
**needn't** You needn't have woken up so early.
- If I were you, I wouldn't borrow his camera without asking.  
**better** You had better not borrow his camera without asking.
- It is necessary for her to have an international driving licence.  
**has** She has to have an international driving licence.

## Vocabulary Practice

**A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.**

**fall behind:** not make progress or move forward as fast as you were supposed to

**fall off:** become detached

**fall out:** (1) be separated from sb's body (e.g. hair, a tooth)  
(2) have an argument with sb

**fill in:** complete

**find out:** learn sth you didn't know, usually through deliberate effort

- When I went to the bank to ask for a loan, I had to fill in hundreds of forms.
- Oh no! The sign has fallen off the wall.
- I was sick last week and as a result I have fallen behind in my work.
- Did you find out who sent you the package?
- John and Mary used to fall out a lot and they eventually split up.

**B Complete using prepositions.**

- Jenny reminds me of that famous actress we saw on television last night.
- We have a preference for dry wine.
- There must be a solution to Jim's problem.
- The rock band has just arrived at the airport.
- Did you get an invitation to/for the wedding?
- I prefer coffee to tea.
- Do you think mum will mind if I lend her book to Kathy?
- We must decide on where to go for the long weekend.
- Paul spends a lot of time on computer games.
- Unfortunately, I'm working on Saturday, so you can forget about going to the beach.



### C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### WE ARE THE CHAMPIONS!

The exciting game between the Dragons and the Tigers is over. The Tigers' failure to win of course means that they won't play in the finals. The Dragons played a wonderful game and earned everyone's admiration. Their combination of tactics and strength definitely helped them win. Due to the continuous development of new strategies by their coach, this will be the fifth year in a row that the Dragons will play in the final. Their popularity has increased over the years and there is no doubt that Hillbell Stadium will be crowded with enthusiastic fans on the day of the final. If they play like today, they are sure to be successful.

**EXCITE**

**WONDER, ADMIRE**

**COMBINE**

**DEVELOP**

**FIVE**

**POPULAR**

**CROWD, ENTHUSE**

**SUCCESS**

### D Complete using the words given.

- game** (n): a pastime or amusement; a contest based on rules, whose result is determined by skill, knowledge, strength or chance
- match** (n): an organised game of football, cricket or other sport
- play** (n): a piece of work written for the theatre (to be performed on stage)

- Shakespeare is very famous for the many plays he wrote.
- I beat Tom at a game of chess.
- The football cup final was the most exciting match of the season.



- beat** (v): defeat sb in a competition or election
- win** (v): achieve first place and gain a prize in a competition

- I hope to win the championship.
- The opposition party beat the party in office in the elections on Sunday.

- earn** (v): receive money as payment for your work
- gain** (v): acquire sth (gradually)

- I earn a good salary which allows me to live comfortably.
- The supermarket chain gave out free gifts to gain more popularity.

- match** (v): (1) be in harmony with sth  
(2) have a pleasing appearance when used together

- These shoes don't fit me, I need a size bigger.
- Fashionable women usually buy handbags to match their shoes.

- suit** (v): (1) be convenient for sb or the best choice in a particular situation

- Buy the white blouse. The colour really suits you.

- (2) make sb look attractive
- fit** (v): be of the correct size or shape



## Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

- Jim \_\_\_\_\_ be watching TV. I just saw him outside.  
a. mustn't                      b. shouldn't                       c. can't                      d. might not
- We are really looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ the competition.  
a. entering                      b. to enter                      c. enter                       d. to entering
- Playing ball in the classroom was a bad idea, boys. You could \_\_\_\_\_ a window.  
a. broke                      b. have been breaking                      c. be breaking                       d. have broken
- The girl admitted \_\_\_\_\_ to her teacher.  
a. to lie                      b. be lying                       c. having lied                      d. to have lied
- Do we \_\_\_\_\_ attend the dance?  
a. ought to                      b. have got to                      c. must                       d. have to
- The robber was made \_\_\_\_\_ where he had hidden the money.  
 a. to confess                      b. confess                      c. confessing                      d. to confessing
- Mike, \_\_\_\_\_ we borrow your CD player? We're having a party tonight.  
a. would                      b. will                       c. could                      d. must
- I have forgotten \_\_\_\_\_ this machine. Can you show me how?  
 a. how to operate                      b. to operate                      c. operating                      d. how operates
- It's difficult for me \_\_\_\_\_ whether I should accept the job offer or not.  
a. decide                      b. deciding                      c. to deciding                       d. to decide
- We saw the girls \_\_\_\_\_ football as we drove past the field.  
a. play                      b. to playing                      c. to play                       d. playing
- I don't think the company can afford \_\_\_\_\_ any new staff this year.  
 a. to employ                      b. to employing                      c. to have employed                      d. be employing
- Don't you know that you \_\_\_\_\_ put that watch in water? It's not waterproof.  
a. don't have to                      b. needn't                      c. didn't need to                       d. mustn't
- \_\_\_\_\_ you tell me how much this costs?  
a. May                       b. Would                      c. Might                      d. Had better
- "What would you like to do tonight?"  
"We \_\_\_\_\_ go and watch a film."  
 a. could                      b. would                      c. need                      d. have to
- I think you \_\_\_\_\_ consider buying the house.  
a. can                      b. need                      c. shall                       d. should

## B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- It was wrong of you to cheat in the exam.  
**ought**      You \_\_\_\_\_ **ought not to have cheated** \_\_\_\_\_ in the exam.
- Hearing that an earthquake had occurred was a great shock to us.  
**shocked**      We \_\_\_\_\_ **were shocked to hear** \_\_\_\_\_ that an earthquake had occurred.
- Steve doesn't mind travelling by bus.  
**used**      Steve \_\_\_\_\_ **is used to travelling** \_\_\_\_\_ by bus.







**B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.**

1. Please send your application to 22 Market St.
2. You'd be impatient too if you had been waiting for two hours!
3. This outfit is (un)suitable for the dance, don't you think?
4. The employees at Maxwell's are all trained in customer service.
5. The children's excitement was obvious at the birthday party.
6. The film is a bit depressing as it deals with the reality of homeless people.
7. He works with great enthusiasm.
8. I can't find the solution to the last maths problem.

APPLY  
PATIENT  
SUIT  
EMPLOY  
EXCITE  
REAL  
ENTHUSE  
SOLVE

**C Complete using the -ing form or the infinitive of the verbs in brackets.****Next stop Mars. . .**

Travelling (travel) to Mars might become (become) a reality sooner than you think. Scientists are planning to send (send) astronauts to explore (explore) Mars in the near future. The surprising thing is that they are not planning to send (send) animals first, but insist on sending (send) people, even though it may be (be) risky. That's because scientists believe that it's the only way to find out (find out) if there is or ever has been life on the planet and if there could ever be (be). "We are in favour of exploring (explore) the possibility of being (be) able to live there. There's no point in beginning (begin) this expedition with animals, is there?" asks Professor Huxley. Other experts in the field object to sending (send) people up there so soon in the experiment. "We need to study (study) the planet as much as we can before we start doing/to do (do) anything. It's no good risking (risk) our astronauts' lives and spending (spend) millions of dollars until we are absolutely sure."



# unit | 09 | Articles

## A/An

The indefinite article **a/an** is used before singular countable nouns or adjectives followed by singular nouns.

### a + consonant sounds

a ruler, a **E**uropean country, a **u**niversity,  
a **o**ne-way ticket, a **h**ospital, a **b**lue overcoat

### an + vowel sounds

an **a**pple, an **e**gg, an **u**mbrella, an **o**range,  
an **h**our, an **e**xciting holiday

### note

- Uncountable or plural countable nouns take **some / any**, etc.  
*I've bought some magazines. We haven't got any more ice cream.*
- A/an is not used before uncountable nouns, except in certain expressions:  
*It is (such) a pity / shame! A good knowledge of French is required for this job.*  
*What a relief! She has a love for / a hatred of / fear of dogs.*
- **A/an - one:** *She has got a car. (We do not specify what kind of car.)*  
*They have got one car. (= only one, not more)*

## Use

### The indefinite article is used:

1. before a noun which is mentioned for the first time and represents no particular person or thing.
2. before a noun which represents a group of people, animals or things.  
We can also use **the** or the plural form.
3. when talking about someone's character, job or nationality.
4. in certain numerical expressions:  
a couple / dozen      a thousand / million  
a half / quarter      a great deal of  
a lot of                  a great many
5. to talk about: price per weight or item  
distance per amount of fuel or speed  
frequency per time  
certain illnesses
6. before *Mr/Mrs/Miss/Ms + surname* when we refer to someone unknown.

### Examples

*They live in a flat.*  
*Take a break.*

*A car is faster than a bike.*  
*The dolphin is an intelligent animal.*  
*Children need love and affection.*

*He is a pessimist.*  
*Her husband is an accountant.*  
*Howard is an Englishman. **But:** Claire is French.*

*We need a hundred copies.*  
*A great many teenagers listen to music while doing their homework.*  
*They walked a quarter of a mile.*

*This brandy costs £25 a bottle.*  
*My car does 50 miles a gallon/130 kilometres an hour.*  
*They go to the cinema twice a month.*  
*He has a fever / a cold / a toothache.*

*A Mrs Jones wants to see you.*

## The

The definite article **the** is used before countable and uncountable nouns of all genders both in the singular and the plural.

### The definite article is used:

1. before countable and uncountable nouns which are specific or have been mentioned before.  
*I'll see the doctor tomorrow.*  
*The postman brought three letters and a parcel; the parcel was for Mary.*

### The definite article is NOT used:

1. before countable and uncountable nouns which refer to something general or have not been mentioned before.  
*He likes coffee.*  
*Experience is important for this job.*  
*Whales are mammals.*



2. before **unique nouns**.  
*the Earth, the sky, the Pyramids*
  3. before **names of seas, oceans, rivers, channels/ canals, coasts, deserts, countries or regions (plural), groups of islands, mountain ranges**:  
*The Mediterranean, the Pacific, the Mississippi, the English Channel, the Panama Canal, the Blue Coast, the Kalahari Desert, the Netherlands, the Highlands, the Bahamas, the Andes*
  4. with **buildings: cinemas, theatres, museums, galleries, pubs, restaurants, hotels, institutions**:  
*the Odeon cinema, the Royal Theatre, the British Museum, the National Gallery, the Black Buoy, the Pasta House, the Hilton, the British Council*
  5. with **newspapers, ships, services, organisations**:  
*the Guardian, the Queen Mary, the police, the United Nations*
  6. with **names of families and nationalities** (when we refer to the whole family or nation):  
*the Simpsons, the Dutch, the Japanese*  
**The** is optional with nationalities ending in -s  
*(the) Greeks, (the) Australians, etc.*
  7. before **musical instruments, dances, inventions** and the word **radio**:  
*Pedro plays the guitar and Rosa dances the flamenco.*  
*When was the telephone invented?*  
*We heard the news on the radio.*  
**But:** *I saw that film on TV last week.*
  8. with the *superlative degree* of adjectives and adverbs.  
*He is the best student in his class.*  
**Most** does not take **the** when it is a determiner:  
*Most students passed the exam.*
  9. with **adjectives referring to classes of people**:  
*the old, the blind, the poor, the educated, etc.*
  10. with **only, same** and **ordinal numbers + nouns**  
*This is the only pen I've got.*  
*Dogs are not all the same.*  
*Who was the first astronaut to walk on the Moon?*
  11. before **noun + of + noun**:  
*the gulf of Mexico, the Statue of Liberty*
  12. with **titles** (not accompanied by proper names):  
*the King, the Queen, the Prince of Wales*  
**But:** *Queen Beatrix of Holland, Princess Margaret*
  13. with **historical events or references**:  
*the Greek Revolution, the American Civil War*  
**But:** *World War II.*
  14. with the **North, the South, the East, the West**:  
*Last year we visited the South of France.*
2. before **names of people, streets, cities, islands, countries, continents, mountains** (singular), **religious holidays, days of the week, months**:  
*Maggie Smith, Oxford Street, Berlin, Ibiza, Italy, Asia, Mont Blanc, Christmas, Friday, August*  
**But:** *the High Street, the Hague, the Vatican*  
**The** is optional before the names of seasons when the meaning is general:  
*Where do you usually go in (the) summer?*  
**The** is used when we talk about a specific season.  
*Do you remember the winter of 1987?*
  3. before **names of squares, parks, lakes, stations**  
*Euston Square, Holland Park, Lake Ontario, Liverpool Street station*
  4. with **pubs, restaurants, hotels, shops, banks, etc.** whose names include the name of their founder or another proper name (e.g. a place)  
*Jimmy's bar, Luigi's Restaurant, Emily's Hotel, Harrods, Lloyds Bank, Gatwick Airport*
  5. before names of **magazines, sports, games, colours, school subjects and languages**:  
*Newsweek (but: The Economist), tennis, chess, white, geography, Greek*  
*German is a difficult language.*  
**But:** *The German language is difficult to learn.*
  6. before names of **airlines or companies**:  
*Air France, Interamerican, BMW, etc.*
  7. with **meals** (breakfast, lunch, dinner, snack):  
*What did you have for breakfast?*  
**But:** When we talk about a specific meal, we use **the**:  
*I didn't enjoy the dinner on the plane.*
  8. before the words **bed, court, church, home, hospital, prison, school, university, work** when they are used for the purpose for which they exist:  
*Thomas went to university to study engineering.*  
**But:** *Patrick went to the university to visit his professor.*
  9. before the words **father, mother, mum, dad** (when we refer to our own parents).  
*Father / Daddy taught me how to drive.*
  10. before means of **transport**.  
*I travel by car / by bus / by train / by air.*  
**Also:** *on foot, on horseback*  
**But:** *He was in the car / on the bus when I saw him.*
  11. with **north, south, east, west** when they are used as adverbs.  
*They are heading west.*
  12. with some **diseases** (cancer, malaria, etc.)  
*You should be vaccinated against malaria if you want to travel to the tropics.*



## Grammar Practice

### A Complete using *a, an, the* or *-*.

Not just a cup of - tea

- - tea is an evergreen plant. It was accidentally discovered by the Emperor - Shen Nung of - China. Whilst on a trip, he was boiling a pot of water when a tea leaf fell into it.
- - British sailors, returning from the Far East, brought packets of - tea back - home as presents for their relatives.
- The first advertisement for - tea appeared in a newspaper called Mercurius Politicus in 1660. The advertisement in the newspaper said that - tea could cure - colds and other illnesses.
- The poor were prepared to pay as much as a third of their weekly wage to have - tea.
- - tea has been the most popular drink in - Britain for three hundred years. The/An average Briton drinks thirty cups of - tea a week. In fact, the British import almost twenty-five percent of all -/the tea exported in the world.



### B Complete using *a, an, the* or *-*.

1. - Jim plays the guitar in - St Mark's Square every day.
2. Unfortunately, there are a lot of accidents on the motorway between - Athens and - Salonica.
3. - Hyde Park is the biggest park in - London.
4. - malaria is a disease carried by - mosquitoes.
5. Every year - swimmers attempt to swim across the English Channel.
6. - Ibiza is an island off the coast of - Spain and is part of the Balearic islands.
7. It has been a long time since I last spoke - Russian.
8. - Europe is the smallest continent on Earth, yet it is the most heavily populated.
9. - most flowers bloom in the/- spring.
10. Every year - millions of people visit the Statue of Liberty.
11. The colours of the Greek flag are - blue and - white.
12. In 1995, the United Nations celebrated their fiftieth anniversary.
13. - father is taking us to a nice restaurant called - Wheeler's on - Sunday for - dinner.
14. - Sophia is a mechanical engineer but she also writes for the Herald.
15. Head - east for about an hour and you'll find the Palace Hotel on the right hand side of the motorway.





6. You shouldn't fight \_\_\_\_\_ your brothers and sisters.  
a. about                      **(b)** with                      c. on
7. The lifeguard saved the woman \_\_\_\_\_ drowning.  
a. after                      b. since                      **(c)** from
8. The search \_\_\_\_\_ the lost boy lasted thirty-six hours.  
a. about                      b. with                      **(c)** for
9. You shouldn't have lied \_\_\_\_\_ your friends about that.  
**(a)** to                      b. about                      c. with
10. The wedding will take place \_\_\_\_\_ a Wednesday.  
a. in                      **(b)** on                      c. by

**C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.**

**THE ART OF ACTING**

My decision to become an **actor/actress** was not an easy one. After all, one's ability to act well isn't enough. It isn't a stable profession. However, I find acting most **enjoyable** and am willing to live without job **security**.

I don't work on TV serials or anything like that. I only take part in theatre **performances**.

It's most rewarding as you get the audience's immediate **reaction**. For example, when doing a **humorous** play, we all wait to hear the audience's **laughter**.

If we don't, we know that the production has been **unsuccessful** and we have failed.

Even though I've had many years of experience, I'm always **terrified** and **nervous** before going on stage. But once I start performing, I quickly lose myself in the play. Playing a character completely different from your own is always a challenge.

**ACT**

**ENJOY, SECURE**

**PERFORM**

**REACT**

**HUMOUR, LAUGH**

**SUCCESS**

**TERROR**

**NERVE**

**D Complete using the correct form of the words given.**

**miss** (v): (1) not attend or take part in sth because you are unable to, don't want to or have forgotten to (2) arrive too late to catch a bus/train/plane, etc.

**lose** (v): (1) not know where sth is because you have forgotten where you put it (2) to have been deprived of sth

**loose** (adj): not tight

**lack** (n): when sth is insufficient or does not exist at all

**shortage** (n): deficiency, not having enough of sth

**reduce** (v): make smaller in quantity or size

**decrease** (v): become smaller in quantity or size

**divide** (v): separate sth into smaller equal parts

**lie** (v): (1) (lie-lay-lain) be in a horizontal position; not standing or sitting (2) (lie-lied-lied) not to tell the truth

**lay** (v): (lay-laid-laid) place sth somewhere

- I've lost weight and this skirt is too **loose** for me to wear.
- You won't believe what happened. I **missed** the plane!
- Karen has **lost** her passport and can't leave the country until she finds it.
- There has been a **shortage** of water this summer and as a result, we aren't allowed to water our gardens.
- A **lack** of calcium in his diet didn't allow him to develop strong bones.
- The teacher **divided** the students into four groups.
- During the summer sales, many shops **reduce** their prices by up to 60%.
- The national debt has **decreased** by one percent this year.
- Craig is **lying** down because he's not feeling very well.
- I suggest you **lay** the blanket on the ground before we sit down and have our picnic.
- How can I trust you? You've **lied** to me so many times.



# unit | 10 | Nouns

## A. Countable Nouns

Countable nouns can be counted and have singular and plural forms. They are defined by **a/an**, **one** in the singular and **some**, **any**, **(a) few**, etc. in the plural.

### Plural Formation

#### Regular nouns

- Most nouns take **-s**:  
*car-cars*
- Nouns ending in **-ch**, **-sh**, **-x**, **-s**, **-ss** take **-es**:  
*church-churches, fox-foxes, bus-buses*
- Nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** form their plural in **-ves**:  
*wolf-wolves, life-lives*  
**But:** some nouns just take **-s** and some others form their plural in both ways:  
*belief - beliefs, roof - roofs, safe - safes, scarf - scarfs/scarves*
- Nouns ending in **-o**, normally take **-es**:  
*tomato-tomatoes*  
**But:** nouns ending in **vowel + -o** (e.g. radio), musical instruments (e.g. piano) and abbreviations (e.g. photo), take **-s**:  
*radio-radios, piano-pianos, photo-photos*
- Nouns ending in **-y**, drop the **-y** and take **-ies**:  
*library-libraries*  
**But:** nouns ending in **vowel + -y**, take **-s**:  
*boy-boys, tray-trays*

#### Irregular nouns

- Some nouns change completely in the plural:  
*man - men                      goose - geese*  
*woman - women              mouse - mice*  
*child - children              louse - lice*  
*foot - feet                      ox - oxen*  
*tooth - teeth*
- Certain nouns are always in the plural form.  
These are:  
a. *arms (=weapons), clothes, contents, customs, goods, people, police, scales, stairs, surroundings (=environment)*  
b. all nouns that consist of two parts: *binoculars, glasses, jeans, pliers, pyjamas, scissors, shorts, tights, trousers, etc.*  
With these nouns we often use **a pair of**.
- Some nouns of Greek or Latin origin form their plural by adding Greek or Latin suffixes:  
*analysis - analyses          criterion - criteria*  
*basis - bases                  phenomenon - phenomena*  
*crisis - crises                  medium - media*
- Some nouns are the same in the singular and the plural form:  
*deer - deer                      species - species*  
*sheep - sheep                  series - series*  
*fish - fish                        aircraft - aircraft*  
*salmon - salmon                means - means*  
*trout - trout                      crossroads - crossroads*
- Collective nouns describe groups of people: *audience, class, committee, crew, family, government, jury, staff*, etc. These nouns take a plural verb if they refer to the members of the group individually, and a singular verb if the group is considered as a unit.  
*My family are organising a trip to Italy.*  
(The family is seen as a group of individuals.)  
*The government is thinking of increasing taxes.*  
(The government is seen as one unit.)
- Nouns preceded by cardinal numbers and used before other nouns are always in the singular form:  
*a ten-pound note (not a ten-pounds note)*  
*a three-year-old boy*

### note

Some nouns have different forms for the masculine and the feminine gender:

husband → wife  
father → mother  
son → daughter  
brother → sister  
uncle → aunt

nephew → niece  
boy → girl  
(bride)groom → bride  
widower → widow  
host → hostess

waiter → waitress  
steward → stewardess  
actor → actress  
hero → heroine  
king → queen

prince → princess  
duke → duchess



## B. Uncountable Nouns

Uncountable nouns cannot be counted and have no plural form. **Some, any, (a) little**, etc. can be used with most of them, but not *a/an/one*.

<b>Food</b>	meat, cheese, bread, butter, fruit, fish, etc.	<b>Diseases</b>	measles, chickenpox, cancer, etc.
<b>Liquids</b>	milk, water, wine, beer, coffee, tea, etc.	<b>Sciences and School Subjects</b>	Mathematics, Physics, Chemistry, Economics, Literature, etc.
<b>Material</b>	glass, wood, iron, paper, steel, gold, etc.	<b>Games</b>	baseball, chess, billiards, darts, football, golf, soccer, poker, tennis, etc.
<b>Natural Phenomena</b>	weather, heat, snow, lightning, wind, rain, thunder, etc.	<b>Abstract nouns</b>	beauty, freedom, love, honesty, justice, business, work, time, information, news, knowledge, accommodation, etc.
<b>Languages</b>	English, French, Greek, Japanese, Italian, etc.	<b>Some Concrete Nouns</b>	baggage, furniture, money, luggage, traffic, business, etc.

### note

- The quantity of uncountable nouns is defined by other words that we can put in front of them:

a cup of coffee/tea	a piece/sheet of paper	a bar of chocolate/soap
a bottle of wine/beer	a packet of tea/flour	a can of soda
a glass of water/orange juice	a carton of milk	a block of wood/ice
a pint of beer	a slice/loaf of bread	a tube of toothpaste
a jar of jam	a lump of sugar	a flash/bolt of lightning
a piece of cake/advice/ information/news	an ice cube/a sugar cube	a clap/peal of thunder
	a pot of yoghurt	

- Some nouns can be either countable or uncountable, but with different meanings:

#### Uncountable

There's a lot of **light** in this room.  
 This bottle is made of **glass**.  
 She brushes her **hair** every morning.  
 This table is made of pine **wood**.  
 She loves walking in the **rain**.  
 I've still got some **work** to do.  
**Experience** is important for this job.

#### Countable

Please, turn on the **lights**.  
 He can't see without his **glasses**.  
 He found two **hairs** in his soup.  
 We saw a fox in the **woods**.  
 How often do the **rains** come in Thailand?  
 The motorway is closed due to road **works**.  
 We had some fascinating **experiences** when we visited Japan.

## C. Compound Nouns

Compound Nouns consist of two parts. Be careful with their plural!

### Types of Compound Nouns

Noun + noun <i>reception hall</i> → <i>reception halls</i> But: <i>woman driver</i> → <i>women drivers</i>	-ing + noun <i>dining room</i> → <i>dining rooms</i>	Adjective + noun <i>greenhouse</i> → <i>greenhouses</i>
Noun + preposition + noun <i>sister-in-law</i> → <i>sisters-in-law</i>	Noun + preposition <i>passer-by</i> → <i>passers-by</i>	No noun (e.g. verb + preposition) <i>a take-off</i> → <i>take-offs</i>

## Grammar Practice

### A Put the words in brackets into the plural form where necessary.

- Appliances Plus sells many different brands of tape recorders (tape recorder).
- Tea (tea), which is made from the dried leaves (leaf) of a small bush, was discovered five thousand years ago.
- Margaret and Don have two three-year-old (three-year-old) daughters (daughter). They are twins (twin)!
- Jack:** I can't see a thing.  
**Brian:** Do you want your glasses (glass)?  
**Jack:** No. It's the dim light (light) that is making it difficult to see.
- The first three runners-up (runner-up) will each receive a medal.
- The attic is full of mice (mouse).
- The Italian and French dictionaries (dictionary) are on the top shelf.
- He met all the criteria (criterion) for the job but wasn't hired because he was late for the interview.
- We are waiting for all the staff (staff) to arrive before beginning the meeting.
- That booklet has all the information (information) you'll need.

### B Choose the correct answers.

- I'm really thirsty. Could you get me a \_\_\_\_\_ of water?  
a. glass                      b. jar                      c. can
- Could I have a \_\_\_\_\_ of cheese, please?  
a. bar                      b. slice                      c. sheet
- I made a mistake. Could you get me a clean \_\_\_\_\_ of paper?  
a. block                      b. packet                      c. sheet
- Mum, where's the \_\_\_\_\_ of marmalade?  
a. tube                      b. jar                      c. cup
- A sudden \_\_\_\_\_ of lightning lit the sky up for a second.  
a. flash                      b. clap                      c. block
- This is a \_\_\_\_\_ of my favourite soap. I love the way it smells.  
a. lump                      b. packet                      c. bar
- Can I have two \_\_\_\_\_ of sugar in my tea, please?  
a. lumps                      b. pieces                      c. pints

### C Complete using a, an, some, any or -.

- I teach \_\_\_\_\_ History and \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish.
- I'm really thirsty. Do you have any beer? Otherwise some/- water is fine.
- An igloo is made from \_\_\_\_\_ ice.
- I'd like some tomatoes, some/a lettuce and some oranges, please.
- \_\_\_\_\_ cancer is a disease which a lot of people die of.
- Have some food. You must be starving after playing \_\_\_\_\_ football all day.
- We decided to replace the balcony door with a sliding glass door because we wanted more \_\_\_\_\_ light in the living room.



8. There isn't any paper left in the machine so I can't make any photocopies.
9. Jane would like some time off — work. She needs a holiday.
10. Brian had an unexpected phone call from World Travel this morning. They told him that he had won a trip to Hawaii, including free — accommodation.

**D Circle the correct answers. In some cases, both answers may be correct.**

1. The crew is / are getting the ship ready to sail.
2. Snow cover / covers the whole valley in winter.
3. Scales measure / measures weight.
4. Salmon spend / spends the first part of their life in a river.
5. The medium which is / are used mostly for advertising is / are television.
6. News travel / travels fast nowadays.
7. The firewood you bought burn / burns well.
8. The cheese on the table is / are very tasty. Try it.
9. This series of books contain / contains medical information.
10. The staff is / are attending the Christmas dinner tonight.



**E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

1. They went on holiday to Tunisia for two weeks.  
**week** They went on a two-week holiday to Tunisia.
2. My glasses need changing, Mum.  
**pair** I need a new pair of glasses, Mum.
3. How many suitcases do you have?  
**much** How much luggage do you have?
4. He has travelled a lot by air, but he still gets nervous when the aircraft takes off.  
**make** Although he has travelled a lot by air, take-offs still make him nervous.
5. Paul likes playing darts more than any other game.  
**favourite** Darts is Paul's favourite game.
6. It didn't rain a lot last year.  
**had** We had (very) little rain last year.
7. I'll give you some advice, Mary.  
**of** I'll give you a piece of advice, Mary.
8. She doesn't know a lot about astronomy.  
**knowledge** Her knowledge of astronomy is very poor.

## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

<b>hand in:</b>	give sth (a document, homework, a notice of resignation, etc.) to sb in charge or of authority
<b>hand out:</b>	distribute sth to several people
<b>hang about:</b>	spend time at a place not doing anything important
<b>hang on:</b>	wait for a short time
<b>hang up:</b>	end a phone call and put down the receiver

1. A lot of my friends hang out at the local cafe.
2. The teacher handed out the test papers to all the students.
3. When she had finished the call, she hung up and went into the kitchen to tell her husband the news.
4. All the students had to hand in their essays by Friday.
5. Could you hang on a minute while I finish with this customer?

### B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

<b>in addition (to):</b>	besides, as well as, also
<b>in advance:</b>	beforehand, before doing sth
<b>in bed:</b>	(still) sleeping or not having got up yet
<b>in the beginning:</b>	initially, at first
<b>in case of:</b>	as a precaution against
<b>in cash:</b>	in notes and/or coins
<b>in charge of:</b>	responsible for sth

1. We've given some money in advance and we'll pay the rest when we get the car.
2. Scott is a foreman and is in charge of many workers.
3. Victoria doesn't feel well. She's been in bed nearly all morning.
4. The price includes the flight and hotel accommodation.  
In addition, you'll be provided with a rental car.
5. Will you pay for the items in cash or by credit card?
6. You must have a first-aid kit in your car in case of an emergency.
7. The children were excited about the trip in the beginning, but now they've lost interest.

### C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

<b>reveal (v):</b>	uncover or expose sth hidden, make it known to people
<b>confess (v):</b>	admit that you have done sth wrong or shameful
<b>admit (v):</b>	acknowledge that sth is true

<b>agree (v):</b>	have the same opinion as sb else about sth
<b>accept (v):</b>	say "yes" to sth or agree to take sth

<b>prevent (v):</b>	(1) make sure that sth will not happen (2) make it impossible for sb to do sth
<b>avoid (v):</b>	take action so as not to do sth unpleasant

1. The criminal finally confessed after forty-eight hours of questioning.
2. Will you admit that what you did was wrong?
3. Statistics revealed that people are recycling rubbish more than they did in the past.
4. I don't agree with the new policy the committee has introduced.
5. We accepted Jane's invitation. She always gives wonderful parties.
6. I avoid walking down dark streets at night.
7. Wearing a seat belt could prevent you from getting hurt in an accident.



### A. Adjectives

- Adjectives are placed before nouns to describe them.
- They have the same form in the singular and the plural.

- They can follow expressions of measurement.
- Adjectives may appear after linking verbs (**appear, be, become, come, get, go, grow, keep, prove, remain, seem, stay, turn**, etc.).

After the verbs **feel, look, smell, sound, taste**, we use adjectives, not adverbs.

Adjectives beginning with **a-** (afraid, alive, alone, awake, etc.), **ill** and **glad** appear only after linking verbs.

*He is a famous author; everybody knows his novels.*

*They live in a large house near the beach.*

*This neighbourhood is full of large houses.*

*The river is 50 metres wide.*

*John is lucky to have a friend like you.*

*This soup tastes good.*

*This music sounds awful.*

*She's been awake since six o'clock.*

*She fell seriously ill last year.*

*I'm sure he'll be glad to meet you.*

#### note

- We use adjectives such as **young, old, blind, deaf, poor, rich, unemployed, illiterate**, etc. with the definite article **the** to describe groups of people in terms of age or status. In this case, the adjectives are **not followed by nouns** and the verb of the sentence is usually in the **plural**.
- We can also use as adjectives:
  - ▶ nouns followed by other nouns describing material and purpose.  
*Amy got a **gold** bracelet as a birthday present.*
  - ▶ nouns preceded by cardinal numbers.  
*My house is only a **ten-minute** walk from here.*
  - ▶ present and past participles.  
*She heard a **frightening** noise.*  
*He won a **well-deserved** gold medal.*

### Order of adjectives

NUMBER	OPINION	FACT							NOUN
		Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	Purpose	
Three	practical	small	new	rectangular	yellow	Korean	plastic	lunch	boxes

### B. Adverbs

- Adverbs describe
- **verbs**, e.g. *Read the instructions carefully.*
  - **adjectives**, e.g. *I'm awfully sorry about what happened.*
  - **other adverbs**, e.g. *He speaks very quickly.*
  - **whole sentences**, e.g. *Apparently, he has forgotten our appointment.*



## Use and Placement

Adverbs	Placement	Examples
Adverbs of <b>manner</b> (seriously, happily, quietly, etc.)	They appear in any position in a sentence. At the beginning of a sentence, they show emphasis. • In the <b>active voice</b> , adverbs of manner usually go <b>after</b> the main verb and its object. In the <b>passive voice</b> , they are usually placed <b>before</b> the main verb.	<i>He dictated the letter slowly.</i> <i>He slowly dictated the letter.</i> <i>Slowly, he dictated the letter.</i> <i>Some people learn languages easily.</i>  <i>Some languages are easily learnt.</i>
Adverbs of <b>place</b> (here, there, etc.)	They usually appear at the end of a sentence or after the verb and its object.	<i>I'll see you there.</i>
Adverbs of <b>time</b> (now, today, soon, recently, etc.)	They are usually placed at the end of a sentence. They may appear at the beginning for emphasis. • One syllable adverbs (soon, then, etc.) usually appear in the middle of a sentence. • <b>Just</b> goes after the auxiliary verb.	<i>Call him tomorrow.</i> <i>Last year we went to Spain for our holidays, but this year we'll stay in Greece.</i> <i>I'll soon need a new pair of shoes.</i> <i>She has just arrived.</i>
<b>Order of adverbs:</b>	<b>manner - place - time</b> • after verbs of movement: <b>place - manner - time</b>	<i>Did you work hard at school yesterday?</i>  <i>Did you go to Paris by plane last summer?</i>
Adverbs of <b>frequency</b> (occasionally, rarely, often, always, etc.)	They usually appear before the main verb but after the (first) auxiliary and the verb "to be".	<i>She rarely listens to classical music.</i> <i>I've always wanted to live in Paris.</i> <i>He is never at home on Sundays.</i>
Adverbs of <b>degree</b> (rather, quite, very, hardly, absolutely, etc.)	They usually appear before the word they modify. • a + quite/rather + adjective + noun or quite/rather + a/an + adjective + noun <b>But:</b> a + fairly/pretty + adjective + noun	<i>I absolutely love this film.</i> <i>The trip was rather interesting.</i> <i>It was a rather dangerous expedition.</i> <i>It was rather a dangerous expedition.</i> <i>It was a pretty dangerous expedition.</i>
<b>Sentence adverbs</b> (apparently, definitely, obviously, probably, etc.)	They express how sure we are about what is said and they appear: • at the beginning of a sentence. • before the main verb or after the auxiliary. • at the end of a sentence.	<i>Apparently, he won't be here on time.</i> <i>You've obviously made a mistake.</i> <i>She is very beautiful, undoubtedly.</i>

### note

- Some words ending in -ly are adjectives, not adverbs: **deadly, elderly, friendly, lively, lonely, lovely, silly**, etc. The adverb of these adjectives is formed with "in a ... way/manner".  
*He is a very friendly person. That's why everybody likes him.*  
*He treats his employees in a very friendly manner.*
- Some other words ending in -ly are both adjectives and adverbs: **hourly, daily, early, weekly, monthly, yearly**, etc.  
*This is a daily programme.*                      *He brushes his teeth twice daily.*
- Pay attention to the meaning of the following adverbs:  
late = not early                      lately = recently  
hard = with a lot of effort                      hardly = almost not any  
near = close                      nearly = almost



## C. Comparisons

### Formation of comparisons (Adjectives and Adverbs)

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative	Be careful with:
one-syllable adjectives and adverbs	short fast shy	short-er fast-er shy-er	the short-est the fast-est the shy-est	hot - hotter - the hottest simple - simpler - the simplest dry - drier - the driest
two-syllable adjectives and adverbs ending in -y	funny early	funnier earlier	the funniest the earliest	
adjectives and adverbs with more than one syllable	modern often	more modern more often	the most modern the most often	quiet - quieter - the quietest <b>or</b> quiet - more quiet - the most quiet <b>But:</b> recent - more recent - the most recent

### Irregular Forms

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good/well	better	best
bad/badly	worse	worst
old	older/elder	oldest/eldest
far	farther/further	farthest/furthest
much/many	more	most
little	less	least

### note

#### Comparative + than

Mary is taller than Anne.

#### The + superlative +

of all / period of time

in + place / group of people

Nick is the best student of all / in his class.

Rudolf Nurejev was among the most important dancers of the 20th century.

**Elder/Eldest** describe family relations. Elder is not followed by **than**.

*My elder brother is studying in England.*

*My brother is older than me (not elder than me).*

**Farther/Farthest** are used only for distance.

**Further/Furthest** are used for distance but they also mean more/most.

*Today we walked farther/further than we did yesterday.*

*There are no further details available yet.*

When we compare two people or things, we can use **the + comparative** (not **the + superlative**).

*Sam is the taller of the two brothers.*

- We can emphasise the meaning of adjectives and adverbs by adding:

▶ **very, pretty, most, rather, quite, fairly** in the positive degree.

*He was most annoyed by the flight delay.*

▶ **a bit, a lot, even, far, much, rather** in the comparative degree.

*She is far more attractive than her sister.*

### Types of Comparisons

Type	Use	Examples
as...as like the same as	Similarity	<i>I won't miss a film as interesting as that one.</i> <i>He must be sleeping like a log.</i> <i>This exercise is the same as the previous one.</i>
not so/as + ... + as not such a + ... + noun + as	Dissimilarity	<i>A bicycle is not so/as fast as a car.</i> <i>Tim is not such a fast runner as his brother.</i>
comparative/superlative twice/three times as...as	Superiority	<i>A car is faster than a bicycle.</i> <i>This is the slowest car I've ever driven.</i> <i>He works twice as hard as his son.</i>
less...than the least...	Inferiority	<i>Italian food is less spicy than Indian.</i> <i>This is the least interesting book I've ever read.</i>
the + comparative... the + comparative	Successive comparison, meaning that the second depends on the first.	<i>The sooner we arrive, the better.</i> <i>The more you study, the more you learn.</i>
comparative + comparative	Successive comparison, indicating a continual change.	<i>The ozone layer is getting thinner and thinner.</i>



## Grammar Practice

### A Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

- My father always uses a big round aluminium frying pan to fry fish in.  
(a/an, aluminium, big, round, frying)
- Mr Brown found three old French wine bottles which are very valuable.  
(French, old, wine, three)
- I got a beautiful blue Italian silk scarf for my birthday.  
(a/an, Italian, silk, blue, beautiful)
- We have an antique oval oak dining table.  
(a/an, oval, antique, dining, oak)
- That is a strange triangular green glass ashtray. Don't you think?  
(a/an, strange, green, glass, triangular)

### B Choose the correct answers.

Pre-school teaching is a lot (1) \_\_\_\_\_ than most other jobs. People think that looking after young children is (2) \_\_\_\_\_ than looking after (3) \_\_\_\_\_ children, but then again the job is not as (4) \_\_\_\_\_ as some might think. What makes it difficult is that the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ they are, the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ responsibility you have.

Small children can be (7) \_\_\_\_\_. They are (8) \_\_\_\_\_ worried than adults about saying "inappropriate" things. Also, they are three times (9) \_\_\_\_\_ energetic as adults. The (10) \_\_\_\_\_ moments in the classroom are when it's quiet. Of course, you always get some children who are (11) \_\_\_\_\_ and (12) \_\_\_\_\_ than others by nature.

I arrive at work (13) \_\_\_\_\_ than teachers who work with (14) \_\_\_\_\_ children. Sure it's not the (15) \_\_\_\_\_ job in the world nor the (16) \_\_\_\_\_ paid. In fact, I know I could work elsewhere for (17) \_\_\_\_\_ hours and get paid (18) \_\_\_\_\_ money.

However, I believe it's a (19) \_\_\_\_\_ rewarding job (20) \_\_\_\_\_ many others I can think of.

- a. more demanding    b. demanding    c. most demanding
- a. easiest    b. more easier     c. easier
- a. older    b. elder    c. oldest
- a. bad    b. badly    c. worse
- a. young     b. younger    c. youngest
- a. most    b. much     c. more
- a. funniest     b. very funny    c. much funny
- a. little     b. less    c. least
- a. so    b. like     c. as
- a. rarer    b. rarely     c. rarest
- a. shy     b. shyer    c. shyest
- a. more quiet    b. quiet    c. more quieter
- a. earliest     b. earlier    c. early
- a. old     b. older    c. oldest
- a. easier    b. easy     c. easiest
- a. good    b. better     c. best
- a. few     b. fewer    c. fewest
- a. more    b. much    c. most
- a. much    b. most     c. more
- a. of     b. than    c. from



### C Circle the correct answers.

- The Johnsons bought a beautiful house at a **much** / **fairly** good price.
- I was able to finish reading the book **much** / **most** sooner than I thought since I had some free time.
- The baby's temperature must have risen. He feels **very** / **even** warmer than before.
- Ray's party is going to be **quite** / **fairly** an exciting event. He told me that it's going to cost him **very** / **far** more than last year's.
- This is a **rather** / **bit** good educational programme for children.
- I'm leaving for the USA **pretty** / **a lot** sooner than I had originally planned.
- It's **absolutely** / **very** marvellous that you could make it to the reunion.
- Margaret finds taking saunas **most** / **much** relaxing.
- I like the car but it's a **rather** / **bit** more expensive than I thought it would be.
- It must be **far** / **pretty** exciting travelling all over the world.

### D Rewrite the sentences using the adverbs in brackets.

- Kim will go camping. (in the spring/probably/there)  
Kim will probably go camping there in the spring.
- Steven knew nothing about the robbery that took place. (absolutely/yesterday/apparently)  
Apparently, Steven knew absolutely nothing about the robbery that took place yesterday.
- That restaurant is expensive, so I won't come with you. (definitely/rather/tonight)  
That restaurant is rather expensive, so I definitely won't come with you tonight.
- Young people find part-time work. (nowadays/in the summer/often)  
Nowadays, young people often find part-time work in the summer.
- Peter has arrived but I'm sure he has forgotten about our meeting. (completely/just/pretty)  
Peter has just arrived but I'm pretty sure he has completely forgotten about our meeting.

### E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- We can't afford such an expensive holiday.  
as We can't afford a holiday as expensive as that.
- As we climbed higher, we had more difficulty breathing.  
**harder** The higher we climbed, the harder it was to breathe.
- Jane gave us a warm welcome when we arrived.  
**friendly** Jane welcomed us in a friendly way/manner when we arrived.
- The weather was getting worse by the minute, so we decided not to go out.  
**and** The weather was getting worse and worse, so we decided not to go out.
- Chris skates better than his sister Anne.  
**such** Anne is not such a good skater as her brother Chris.
- The journey was less tiring than I thought it would be.  
**as** The journey was not as/so tiring as I thought it would be.
- This is the worst book I have ever read.  
**than** I have never read a worse book than this one.
- Danny's briefcase is similar to yours.  
**same** Danny's briefcase is almost the same as yours.

## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

<b>hold on:</b>	wait for a short time
<b>hold on to:</b>	hold sth
<b>hold up:</b>	(1) delay sb or sth (2) rob
<b>hurry up:</b>	make haste, do sth quickly
<b>keep back:</b>	reserve sth, not reveal or give away all of it
<b>keep off:</b>	stay off sth
<b>keep on:</b>	continue doing sth
<b>keep out (of):</b>	stay outside a place, not enter
<b>keep up (with):</b>	maintain the same level or speed as sb else

1. Can't you read the sign? It says keep off the grass!
2. Craig kept on working despite being tired.
3. Could you hold on a minute while I phone Mr Bent?
4. No matter how hard I tried, I couldn't keep up with Samantha in the race.
5. Could you hold on to these bags while I buy some bread?
6. Hurry up! If we miss the bus, the next one isn't for an hour.
7. A masked man held up the National Bank this morning, but he was caught later in the day.
8. The police kept back information about the murders so as not to scare people.
9. Please, keep the dog out of the kitchen because I've just washed the floor.

### B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

<b>in common:</b>	sharing certain things or characteristics
<b>in comparison with:</b>	compared with
<b>in conclusion:</b>	lastly, finally
<b>in control of:</b>	having the power to manipulate sth or make decisions about it
<b>in danger:</b>	in a dangerous situation
<b>in detail:</b>	analytically, precisely
<b>in the end:</b>	finally, lastly
<b>in fact:</b>	actually, in reality
<b>in fashion:</b>	fashionable
<b>in favour of:</b>	supporting sth
<b>in good/bad condition:</b>	in good/bad shape
<b>in sb's free time:</b>	when sb is not busy

1. The president of the company is the man in control of everything. Nothing can be done without his approval.
2. In conclusion, I would like to thank you all for listening to me.
3. What do you do in your free time? Do you read books?
4. I agree with you. I am in favour of renovating the house.
5. The witness was asked to describe in detail the events which took place on 26 March.
6. In comparison with last year's records, it seems that our sales have increased.
7. These bright colours are in fashion this summer.
8. Even though we are brother and sister, we have nothing in common.
9. You should buy this second-hand car. It really is in good condition.
10. This painting looks like an original Monet, but in fact it is a copy.
11. We couldn't decide where to go for a holiday, so in the end we consulted our travel agent who suggested New Zealand.
12. If you continue spending money like this, you are in danger of losing your business.



### C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### WHAT'S ON THE TELLY TONIGHT?

After 1948, the Hollywood studios, where films for the cinema were produced, faced a new kind of competition. The arrival of television.

**ARRIVE**

At first, Hollywood didn't worry. After all, John Baird's invention could only produce small black and white pictures. However, they were mistaken.

**INVENT**

To the astonishment of the Hollywood studios, by the early 1950s weekly attendance at cinemas had dropped by fifty percent.

**ASTONISH, WEEK**

Television today has become part of everyday life. These boxes give endless

**END**

hours of pleasure to millions of people. It is also an economical form of entertainment. However, TV can also be harmful and not only for the eyes. For

**PLEASE, ECONOMY**

instance, programmes containing scenes of violence can influence children's

**HARM**

behaviour negatively.

**VIOLENT**

**BEHAVE**

Who would have thought that television would influence our lives so much?

### D Complete using the words given.

**false** (adj): (1) incorrect, untrue, mistaken (2) artificial, not real (e.g. false teeth)

**artificial** (adj): not natural (e.g. artificial flowers)

**fake** (adj): sth looking valuable or genuine in order to deceive people (e.g. a fur coat)

**unreal** (adj): (1) not real, imaginary (2) bizarre, so strange that you can't believe it is happening

**untrue** (adj): not true, not based on fact

#### **different**

**(from/to)** (adj): not the same

**imitation** (n): a copy of sth, made to look as if it were genuine (e.g. imitation leather)

**counterfeit** (adj): (money, goods, documents, etc.) not genuine, but looking genuine in order to deceive people

1. I avoid foods that have artificial additives.

2. Call the police. These American dollars are counterfeit.

3. It felt so unreal seeing all my high-school friends after 15 years!

4. In the 1970s wearing false eyelashes was very fashionable.

5. This is a very good imitation of the painting.

6. That statement is untrue. I have papers to prove it.

7. This architecture is different to anything I've ever seen before.

8. This isn't a real diamond. It's a fake.

9. Authentic Asian cuisine has some unusual herbs.

10. You keep the original copy and I keep the photocopy.

**authentic** (adj): genuine

**original** (adj): the first and genuine form of sth (a document, a work of art, etc.), not a copy

# 12 Determiners

## A. Some / Any / No / Every / Each

**Some, any** and **no** are used with countable (singular and plural) and uncountable nouns. **Each** and **every** are used only with singular countable nouns. The compounds of **some, any, no** and **every** are pronouns; no noun can be used with them.

	Use	Examples
<b>some</b> someone/somebody something somewhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>in affirmative sentences</li> <li>in questions when a positive answer is expected</li> <li>in polite requests and offers</li> </ul>	<i>Someone took my keys by mistake.</i> <i>Are you looking for something?</i>  <i>Would you like some cake?</i>
<b>any</b> anyone/anybody anything anywhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>in questions</li> <li>in affirmative sentences, meaning “no matter which”</li> <li>in negative sentences when <b>not</b> or other negative words (hardly, never, rarely, etc.) are included</li> </ul>	<i>Is anyone in the kitchen?</i> <i>You can visit us any day next week.</i>  <i>I don't eat anything spicy.</i> <i>Hardly anyone has arrived yet.</i>
<b>no</b> no one/nobody nothing nowhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>in negative sentences instead of <b>not any</b>; no other negative words can be used</li> </ul>	<i>He has nowhere to go.</i>
<b>every</b> everyone/everybody everything everywhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>when we consider people or things as a group</li> <li>with <b>nearly</b> and <b>not</b></li> </ul> <p><b>every one of</b> + plural noun/pronoun</p>	<i>Every car has a steering wheel.</i> <i>Nearly every house in this area has a garden.</i> <i>Not every room has a nice view.</i> <i>I found every one of these books interesting.</i>
<b>each</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>when we consider people or things separately</li> </ul> <p><b>each (one) of</b> + plural noun/pronoun</p>	<i>Each student came up with a different idea.</i> <i>Each one of them received a free copy of the magazine.</i>

### note

- **Some of** and **any of** go with a plural verb.  
*Do any of your friends speak Italian?*
- The **compounds** of **some, any, no** and **every** go with a singular verb. **Else** can be used with them (meaning “more” or “different”).  
*Someone else wants to speak to you.*
- **Someone/somebody, anyone/anybody, no one/nobody** and **everyone/everybody** refer to both genders, so we use plural pronouns and possessive adjectives.  
*They didn't take any photos because no one had brought their camera with them.*



## B. Much / Many / A lot of / (A) little / (A) few

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns	Use	Examples
many	much	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• mostly in questions and negations</li> <li>• in affirmative sentences with <b>too</b>, <b>so</b>, <b>how</b> and <b>as</b></li> <li>• at the beginning of the sentence (in formal English)</li> </ul>	<i>Are there many homeless people in Athens?</i> <i>There is too much sugar in my coffee.</i> <i>Much money is spent on space exploration.</i>
a few	a little	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• they show a small amount (positive meaning) and can be used with <b>only</b>.</li> </ul>	<i>She has lived in England for a few years.</i> <i>I've only got a little work to do.</i>
few	little	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• they show a very small amount (negative meaning) and can go with <b>very</b>, <b>so</b>, <b>too</b>, <b>as</b> and <b>how</b>.</li> </ul>	<i>There are very few pencils on the table (not enough for everyone).</i> <i>There's too little sugar in my coffee.</i>
<b>Countable and uncountable nouns</b> a lot (of) lots of plenty (of)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in affirmative sentences before nouns and pronouns</li> </ul> <b>A lot</b> , <b>Lots</b> and <b>Plenty</b> can also be used without nouns.	<i>A lot of cars run on unleaded fuel.</i> <i>We needn't buy any more bread; we've got plenty.</i>

## C. Both / Either / Neither / Most / All / None / Whole

### For two people or things

Determiner	Use	Examples
Both (of)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It has a positive meaning and goes with a plural verb.</li> </ul>	<i>Both my brothers are engineers.</i> <i>They both live in England.</i>
Both ... and	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• They state that something is true for two people or things. The verb of the sentence is always in the plural form.</li> </ul>	<i>Both of them saw the film.</i> <i>Both Tim and John like football.</i>
Either Either of Either ... or	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Either</b> means "any one of the two".</li> <li>• <b>Either of</b> goes with a singular or plural verb.</li> <li>• They state that something is true for any one of two people, things, etc. The verb of the sentence is either in the singular or plural form.</li> </ul>	<i>Paris or London? Either city is beautiful.</i> <i>Either of these cities is/are beautiful.</i> <i>Either he was too busy or he didn't know about the party.</i>
Neither Neither of Neither ... nor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Neither</b> means "not one and not the other".</li> <li>• <b>Neither of</b> goes with a singular (formal) or plural verb (informal).</li> <li>• They have a negative meaning and state that something is not true for either of the two people or things. The verb of the sentence is either in the singular or plural form.</li> </ul>	<i>Neither book was interesting.</i> <i>Neither of my parents works / work at weekends.</i> <i>Neither Tim nor John like(s) football.</i>

### For more than two people or things

Most Most of All All of	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• They have a positive meaning and go with a plural verb.</li> </ul> All + that-clause + singular verb = The only thing...	<i>Most young people like pop music.</i> <i>Most of my friends live in Athens.</i> <i>All of them enjoy picnics.</i> <i>All (that) he does is criticise me.</i>
None None of	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None</b> has a negative meaning. It is not followed by a noun.</li> <li>• <b>None of</b> is used before nouns or object pronouns with a singular or plural verb.</li> </ul>	<i>Any questions? No, none.</i> <i>None of the students speaks/speak German.</i> <i>None of them wants/want to leave.</i>

#### note

**Whole** (=complete) goes between a determiner and a singular countable noun.  
*She spent the whole evening watching TV.*



## Grammar Practice

### A Circle the correct answers.

1. **Christopher:** Does **anyone** / **someone** need the car for the next hour? I need to go **anywhere** / **somewhere**.
- Michael:** No, I don't.
- Darren:** Neither do I. I've got **anywhere** / **nowhere** to go, so take it. But on your way back, could you get **each one of** / **everyone** us an ice cream?
2. **Louise:** You sit in the sun nearly **every** / **each** day. Aren't you worried about getting burnt?
- Marion:** Oh, I never stay in the sun for too long and I always put on **any** / **some** suntan lotion.
3. **Catherine:** I haven't had **anything** / **something** to eat today.
- Alexander:** I'm so hungry that I could eat **something** / **everything** on the table.
- Catherine:** We can eat as much as we like. **Every** / **Everyone** else has eaten.
4. **Receptionist:** Are you looking for **someone** / **no one**?
- Woman:** Yes, I am. Mrs Byrne.
- Receptionist:** Let's see...Oh yes, she's on the third floor, in room 309.
- Woman:** Could you also tell me what the morning visiting hours are?
- Receptionist:** You can visit patients in this hospital at **any** / **no** time as long as it's not after midnight!
5. **Salesperson:** **Each** / **Every** of these cars has air-conditioning.
- Customer:** Do all of them have airbags?
- Salesperson:** No, not **each** / **every** car has an airbag.

### B Circle the correct answers.

- Many** / **Much** people showed up at the concert.
- Few** / **Little** people go mountaineering during the winter.
- There's very **little** / **a little** time left to get ready for the dance.
- You needn't apply any more suntan lotion; you've got **plenty of** / **plenty** on.
- There is **a lot of** / **a lot** traffic on the motorway.
- You didn't make **much** / **many** serious mistakes in the test, but you should be more careful with your spelling.
- We've only got **a little** / **a few** petrol left. We'd better stop at the next petrol station.
- We need to get **a few** / **few** stamps from the post office. I want to send off my Christmas cards.
- I couldn't find **many** / **much** information on ancient Greek art in my encyclopaedia. I'll go to the library.
- How **much** / **many** bread do you want me to buy?

### C Complete using *both, either, neither, all, none or whole*.

- I can't wear either of these two jumpers. Both of them need washing.
- Some siamese twins have to spend their whole life joined together.
- You can eat either/both of these two small pies but leave the big one for John.
- I don't think the address I have is correct. I've sent him several letters but I've received none in return.
- All of the children in my class are starting to learn another language and they find it very enjoyable.



6. After she had talked to her two older sisters, she told both of them that she appreciated their advice but that she would do what she thought was right.
- 7 Neither of my parents can drive us to school because they're at work.
8. I had an awful Sunday. I spent the whole day cleaning.
9. Tanya, Robert, Craig and I are coming to visit you. Don't cook anything because we had a big lunch and none of us are hungry.
10. Sally has been sick all week. I hope she starts feeling better soon.

**D Choose the correct answers. Sometimes both answers may be correct.**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Both actors _____ Shakespeare beautifully.<br>a. perform                      b. performs               | 5. Neither of them _____ Spanish very well.<br>a. speak                      b. speaks                     |
| 2. Either dress _____ fine.<br>a. is                              b. are                                   | 6. Nobody _____ arrived, so we can't start the meeting yet.<br>a. has                              b. have |
| 3. Everybody _____ wearing formal evening clothes.<br>a. is                              b. are            | 7. All Derek does _____ complain.<br>a. are                              b. is                             |
| 4. Each room of the house _____ painted a different colour.<br>a. were                              b. was | 8. None of us _____ a car, so let's rent one.<br>a. has                              b. have               |

**E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

1. It's unbelievable, but not a single dress in that shop suited me.  
**none**            It's unbelievable, but none of the dresses in that shop suited me.
2. This restaurant doesn't have any English-speaking waiters.  
**no**            There are no English-speaking waiters in this restaurant.
3. She was doing her Christmas shopping all afternoon.  
**the**            She spent the whole afternoon doing her Christmas shopping.
4. I thought that both novels were boring at the beginning.  
**neither**        I thought that neither novel was interesting at the beginning.
5. Mark, the only thing you do is watch TV!  
**all**            Mark, all you do is watch TV!
6. There aren't a lot of things to do in a village.  
**much**        There isn't much to do in a village.
7. I always take my sunglasses with me wherever I go.  
**never**        I never go anywhere without my sunglasses.
8. Jim bought two books last week, but he hasn't started reading them yet.  
**of**            Jim hasn't started reading either of the books (that) he bought last week.

## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

**knock down:** (1) hit sb (with a vehicle) and cause them to fall down  
(2) pull down a building or part of it

**knock out:** make sb unconscious

**knock over:** hit sb (with a vehicle) and cause them to fall down

**leave out:** not include

**let down:** disappoint sb

**lock out:** prevent sb from entering by locking the doors

**lock up:** (1) place sth somewhere and fasten the lock  
(2) make sure that all the doors and windows of a building or a car are locked

1. If you don't like garlic, leave it out of the recipe.
2. Don't forget to lock up when you leave the house.
3. My best friend has never let me down. She's always there for me when I need her.
4. I heard that the City Council has decided to knock down that old building and build a car park in its place.
5. The boxer knocked out his opponent in the second round.
6. The driver didn't see the man crossing the street and knocked him down/over.
7. I accidentally locked out the cat last night, so it slept on the front doormat.

### B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### NOT FOR THE FAINT-HEARTED!

Sky-diving isn't something new, but courageous cameramen jumping out of planes with all the necessary equipment to film a sky-diver, is. The cameramen are not of course totally inexperienced, as they go through a training programme. After a lot of thought and careful planning this amazing idea was put into practice so that judges could observe the sky-divers' skilful manoeuvres from the ground. Then they judge them accordingly in competitions at a height of over 10 000 feet! The pictures are shown on huge screens on the ground for the judges. Crowds gather and look on with curiosity and amazement at seeing such a dangerous sport in action.

**COURAGE**

**EQUIP**

**EXPERIENCE, TRAIN**

**THINK**

**SKILL**

**COMPETE, HIGH**

**CURIOUS, AMAZE**

### C Complete using the words given.

**behaviour** (n): social conduct, the way a person or an animal behaves

**manner** (n): the way sb does sth

**manners** (n): social conduct

**habit** (n): sth you do often or regularly

**routine** (n): the usual series of things sb does regularly at a particular time

1. He was impolite and had bad manners, as he spoke with his mouth full.
2. Clients trust Mrs Parker as she always deals with them in a very professional manner.
3. The dog's strange behaviour made us realise that something was wrong.
4. When I'm nervous, I am in the habit of biting my nails.
5. Part of our daily routine includes a jog before breakfast.



## Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

- “Who is it?”  
“\_\_\_\_\_ Jenny.”  
a. My                                      b. I’m                                       c. It’s                                      d. Mine
- You should hear Lucy play \_\_\_\_\_ guitar!  
 a. the                                      b. one                                      c. some                                      d. a
- There’s \_\_\_\_\_ freshly squeezed orange juice in the fridge if you’re thirsty.  
a. a                                       b. some                                      c. one                                      d. little
- \_\_\_\_\_ can come to the club. You don’t need to be a member.  
a. Someone                                      b. Every                                      c. Each one                                       d. Anyone
- “Saturday or Sunday”?  
“\_\_\_\_\_ day is fine. Come whenever you like.”  
a. Neither                                       b. Either                                      c. Both                                      d. None
- They had \_\_\_\_\_ ashtrays on the table.  
 a. two square glass                                      b. square two glass                                      c. glass square two                                      d. two glass square
- My nephews speak French really \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. good                                      b. better                                       c. well                                      d. best
- Coffee is cheap at this supermarket but it costs even \_\_\_\_\_ at Save Supermarket.  
a. least                                      b. more little                                      c. little                                       d. less
- There is \_\_\_\_\_ food left but not enough for everyone.  
a. little                                       b. a little                                      c. few                                      d. a few
- I have never seen \_\_\_\_\_ tall building as that before.  
a. a so                                      b. a more                                       c. such a                                      d. a such
- Don’t forget to buy a \_\_\_\_\_ of toothpaste for the trip.  
a. can                                       b. tube                                      c. carton                                      d. pint
- Neither Julie nor Sue \_\_\_\_\_ to work today because they are both ill.  
a. goes                                      b. isn’t going                                      c. aren’t going                                       d. is going
- If you require any \_\_\_\_\_, please contact my secretary.  
 a. further information                                      b. further informations                                      c. farther information                                      d. farther informations
- The \_\_\_\_\_ we work out, \_\_\_\_\_ we become.  
a. most ... the fitter                                      b. more ... the more fitter                                       c. more ... the fitter                                      d. more ... the fittest
- All he does is \_\_\_\_\_ all day long.  
a. to sleep                                      b. sleeping                                      c. sleeps                                       d. sleep

## B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- On Sunday nights, the roads into Athens are very busy.  
traffic                      There \_\_\_\_\_ is a lot of traffic \_\_\_\_\_ on the roads into Athens on Sunday nights.
- None of these books are more informative than the encyclopaedia.  
most                      The encyclopaedia \_\_\_\_\_ is the most informative \_\_\_\_\_ of all these books.
- The attic doesn’t have any windows.  
no                      There \_\_\_\_\_ are no windows \_\_\_\_\_ in the attic.



4. The mechanic made a careful inspection of the car to see what was wrong with it.

**inspected** The mechanic inspected the car carefully to see what was wrong with it.

5. I attended a course at Kent College for two months.

**on** I went on a two-month course at Kent College.

6. I can't live in such a small flat.

**as** I can't live in a flat as small as this.

7. In my opinion, both hotels are expensive, so let's find another one.

**cheap** In my opinion, neither hotel is cheap, so let's find another one.

8. I don't think that Japanese is easy to learn.

**language** I don't think that the Japanese language is easy to learn.

## Vocabulary Practice

### A Choose the correct answers.

- the grass!  
a. Go out                      **(b.)** Keep off                      c. Move out                      d. Pull over
- Please don't                      the phone on me again!  
a. hand in                      b. hang out                      **(c.)** hang up                      d. hang on
- We didn't have to pay for the furniture in                      but on the day of delivery.  
a. time                      **(b.)** advance                      c. cash                      d. future
- My children have excellent table                     .  
**(a.)** manners                      b. manner                      c. behaviour                      d. habits
- You can't                      traffic in the city centre in the afternoon, so why don't you go in the morning?  
a. prevent                      b. miss                      **(c.)** avoid                      d. lack
- flowers are usually made of plastic or silk.  
**(a.)** Artificial                      b. Untrue                      c. False                      d. Unreal
- He never                      he is wrong.  
**(a.)** admits                      b. reveals                      c. confesses                      d. agree
- I                      the concert because of the exams.  
a. lost                      b. loss                      **(c.)** missed                      d. loose
- The teacher needs to                      the class into two to play the game.  
a. decrease                      **(b.)** divide                      c. reduce                      d. shortage
- The government                      the name of the spy last night.  
a. admitted                      b. agreed                      c. confessed                      **(d.)** revealed
- Jenny is Korean, so she cooks                      Korean food.  
**(a.)** authentic                      b. imitation                      c. artificial                      d. original
- We decided to                      our old house and build a new one.  
a. knock over                      **(b.)** knock down                      c. knock out                      d. let down
- That scarf really                      that dress! It's a perfect match.  
a. goes up                      **(b.)** goes with                      c. goes over                      d. goes on
- Can you clean the kitchen                      to the bathroom?  
a. in advance                      b. in case                      **(c.)** in addition                      d. in change
- The reception took place                      Saturday.  
**(a.)** on                      b. in                      c. at                      d. by



**B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.**

1. We shouldn't hire such a young and inexperienced man for a job as difficult as this one. **EXPERIENCE**
2. It is said that electricity is the greatest invention. **INVENT**
3. Everybody liked the play and the critics said that it was definitely a success. **SUCCEED**
4. Entering the burning house to save the little boy was a very courageous thing to do. **COURAGE**
5. Despite their terrifying appearance, most dinosaurs were harmless vegetarians. **HARM**
6. We didn't find our trip unpleasant although it was raining. **PLEASE**
7. His reaction to the news was unpredictable. **REACT**
8. She looked at me in amazement. **AMAZE**

**C Complete using only one word in each blank.**



Roller-coasters have been around for over one hundred years and their popularity is constantly increasing.

Some people are crazy about roller-coasters and travel around (1) the world to try out new rides famous for their speed, length or height. They love the feeling of not being (2) in control, the speed and the "sickening" feeling in their stomach. Some roller-coasters are made of pine wood. These rides feel

(3) less safe because the track shakes and makes (4) a lot of noise. As a result, the rides seem (5) more/rather very/extremely dangerous. However, they are just (6) as safe as steel frame ones.

Besides, all roller-coasters are equipped with safety bars which people hold (7) on to and which can (8) prevent riders from falling off.



### A. Personal Pronouns

Personal Pronouns replace nouns and are used as subjects (**I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they**) or objects (**me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them**) of verbs. *John is my cousin. He lives next door. Have you seen him lately?*

Pronouns	Use	Examples
He/Him She/Her	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for people, babies and animals if we know their gender</li> <li>▶ <b>She/her</b> can also be used for ships and countries.</li> </ul>	<i>Don't go near that dog; he could bite you.</i> <i>The large cruise ship looked impressive as she steamed out of the harbour.</i>
It	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for things, babies and animals (if the gender is unknown or unimportant)</li> <li>in expressions of time, distance, weather and temperature</li> <li>when we are asking or saying who a person is</li> <li>at the beginning of a sentence, instead of a full infinitive or a that-clause</li> <li>as the subject of the verbs <b>appear, depend, happen, look, occur, seem, sound</b>, etc.</li> </ul>	<i>It's a really cute baby.</i>  <i>It's twelve o'clock.</i> <i>It was very cold last Christmas.</i> <i>Who is it? It's Mary.</i> <i>It is not wise to lend money to strangers.</i> <i>It seems that he is not enjoying the party.</i>

#### note

- **It takes + (object) + time expression + full infinitive**

*It took an hour to drive to the airport.*

**Subject + take + time expression + full infinitive**

*Anne will take at least two hours to iron these clothes.*

- **There + be** is used for something we mention for the first time.  
**It + be/other verb** is used for something that has already been mentioned.  
*There was a letter for you this morning. It is on your desk.*

### B. Possessive Adjectives

Possessive Adjectives (**my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their**) are always used before a noun (without an article). They have the same number and gender as the owner. *my parents, her bicycle, their clothes*

#### note

- If we want to emphasise that something belongs to only one person, we use **my/your**, etc. + **own + noun**.  
*They have their own flat.*
- **on my/your/his**, etc. **own** = alone, without help  
*Mary does her homework on her own.*

### C. Possessive Pronouns

Possessive Pronouns (**mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs**) replace **my/your**, etc. + **noun**. They are never followed by nouns. *Shall we take your car or mine?*

#### note

**A/an + noun + of + mine/yours**, etc. = **one of + my/your**, etc. + **noun**  
*a friend of mine = one of my friends*

### Possessive case

Form	Use	Examples
's	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>singular nouns (people or animals)</li> <li>someone/somebody, anyone, etc.</li> <li>irregular plural nouns (not ending in -s)</li> <li>compound nouns</li> </ul>	<i>Tim's computer, the dog's collar</i> <i>It's nobody's fault.</i> <i>the children's clothes</i> <i>my father-in-law's car</i>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>time expressions/idioms</li> <li>▶ When two or more people own something in common, 's is added to the last noun.</li> <li>▶ When two or more people own different things, 's is added to each noun.</li> </ul>	<i>today's weather, last Sunday's newspapers, for heaven's sake John and Mary's car.  George's and Andrew's desks.</i>
'	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>regular plural nouns</li> <li>▶ Nouns ending in -s in the singular (especially names) take both 's and '.</li> </ul>	<i>my parents' bedroom Chris's / Chris' shoes</i>
of + noun	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>things, abstract nouns, animals (sometimes)</li> <li>▶ We can use <b>of</b> for people, only in long phrases.</li> <li>▶ For places and organisations we can use <b>of</b> or 's.</li> </ul>	<i>the front seat of the car the price of success the eye of the tiger (=the tiger's eye) The son of the man who rents our flat is a doctor. the city's population / the population of the city the company's plans / the plans of the company</i>

### D. Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns are: **myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.**

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>with the verbs <b>behave, cut, educate, enjoy, help, hurt, kill, like, teach,</b> etc. if the subject and the object of the verb are the same</li> <li>after certain verbs with prepositions (talk to, say to, take care of, etc.)</li> <li>after the verbs <b>look, seem,</b> etc. to describe emotions or behaviour</li> <li>for emphasis (<b>emphatic pronouns</b>); they are placed after the subject or the object of the verb, or at the end of the sentence.</li> </ul> <p><b>by + reflexive pronoun</b> = alone, without help</p> <p>Reflexive pronouns are <b>not</b> normally used:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- with the verbs <b>concentrate, relax, rest.</b></li> <li>- with verbs describing actions that people usually do for themselves (<b>wash, dress, shave, wake up,</b> etc.).</li> <li>- after <b>prepositions of place.</b></li> </ul>	<p><i>He has taught himself how to play the guitar.</i></p> <p><i>He was sitting in the dark, talking to himself.</i></p> <p><i>You don't look yourself today; is there anything wrong?</i></p> <p><i>The President himself visited the hospital.</i></p> <p><i>The scouts built this boat by themselves.</i></p> <p><i>You have to concentrate more.</i></p> <p><i>She got up, washed her face and had breakfast.</i></p> <p><i>He was watching the woman in front of him.</i></p>

#### note

- Reflexive pronouns are used after certain verbs to form idioms:
  - enjoy yourself** = have a good time
  - behave yourself** = be good
  - help yourself to** (sth) = you are welcome to have an amount of sth
  - make yourself at home** = make yourself comfortable
  - make yourself heard/understood** = speak loudly/clearly
- Note the difference between **themselves** and **each other** = (one another), both referring to two people.
  - They were looking at themselves in the mirror.*
  - They were just sitting there, looking at each other.*

### E. Other Pronouns

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>One-Ones</b> are used if we do not want to repeat a countable noun.</li> </ul> <p><i>Would you like the green sweater or the blue one?</i></p> <p><i>Where are the glasses? I need some tall ones.</i></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Other</b> means "more" or "different".</li> <li>▶ <b>the other(s)</b> = the rest</li> <li>▶ <b>others</b> = more, apart from those already mentioned</li> <li>▶ <b>every other day/week,</b> etc. = every second day/week, etc.</li> <li>▶ <b>the other day</b> = a few days ago</li> <li>▶ <b>another</b> = one more. It can also go with expressions of time, distance or money.</li> </ul> <p><i>I'd like another glass of orange juice.</i></p> <p><i>We must drive for another ten miles.</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Question word + ever</b> (whoever, whatever, wherever, whenever, however, whichever) = any person, thing, place, time, etc.</li> </ul> <p><i>Wherever you hide, they will find you.</i></p>	



# Grammar Practice

## A Circle the correct answers.

### Little White Lies

**It** / **There** is difficult to admit **itself** / **it**, but most of **our** / **us** tell lies now and again. There is the social lie, (*How nice to see **you** / **yourself**, ...oh and **me** / **I** love that new hairstyle of **yours** / **your** ...*), the white lie (*Sorry **I** / **my** can't come to **you** / **your** dinner party because **myself** / **I** am having guests **themselves** / **myself**...*) and the lie that makes life easier (***I** / **Me** have no idea how that report got on **mine** / **my** desk, sir*).

Most forms of lying are innocent and involve a harmless desire to make **us** / **our** lives easier. But **it** / **its** depends on how much **we** / **us** lie. Some people spend **them** / **their** whole life deceiving others.

Margaret, for example, is a compulsive liar. **It** / **She** has always enjoyed gossiping with **her** / **hers** friends about other people. **She** / **Herself** starts out with something which is true and comes out with a totally different story, using that great imagination of **herself** / **hers**. Margaret's need for attention drives **her** / **she** to lying.

But let's not kid **ourselves** / **us**. Lying is a really bad habit. **Yourselves** / **You** all know the story of the little boy who cried "Wolf!" too many times and then found **him** / **himself** being ignored when the wolf **itself** / **it** came.

## B Complete using the words in brackets and the Possessive Case.

- Keeping the environment clean should be (the concern/everyone) everyone's concern
- Both (the essays/Craig and John) Craig's and John's essays were detailed and very well-written.
- Baby kangaroos live in (the pouch/the mother) the mother's pouch/the pouch of the mother for about eight months.
- Those are (the children/our next door neighbour) the children of our next door neighbour/our next door neighbour's children.
- (the parents/the children) The children's parents are going to (the office/the principal) the principal's office.
- (the room/Christine and Michelle) Christine and Michelle's room needs painting.
- (the newspapers/last week) Last week's newspapers contained a lot of information about the Internet.
- (the cover/this book) The cover of this book is falling apart.

## C Choose the correct answers. Sometimes both answers may be correct.

- Your cat is so tame and friendly. \_\_\_\_\_ is completely wild and won't let anyone come near her.
  - Us
  - (b)** Ours
  - Our
- \_\_\_\_\_ I bumped into our old friend Margaret Stanton.
  - (a)** The other day
  - Another day
  - Every other day
- Ann:** Are you going to wear the blue or the grey suit to the interview?  
**Tom:** The \_\_\_\_\_.
  - (a)** blue one
  - other blue
  - blue ones
- Mark:** Who's at the door, Julie?  
**Julie:** \_\_\_\_\_ Jim.
  - He's
  - His
  - (c)** It's
- I go to aerobic classes \_\_\_\_\_ day.
  - the other
  - (b)** every other
  - another







## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using prepositions.

1. My parents were disappointed in/with me when they saw the marks I got in the final exam.
2. Customers are not satisfied with this product. It causes allergic reactions.
3. Graham Bell is famous for inventing the telephone.
4. Simon complained to the manager about the poor service in the restaurant.
5. I'm tired of all the work I'm expected to do while others sit around doing nothing.
6. I was very impressed by/with the way things were run at that school.
7. I'm really bored with my routine. I should take up a new hobby.
8. Chocolate ice cream is popular with most children.
9. Christine was annoyed with me because I arrived late.
10. The President was upset by the violent demonstration held outside the Parliament.
11. I'm fed up with your excuses for not doing any work!
12. I disapprove of your staying out so late.

### B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### A HANGOUT

During cold winter afternoons, I normally meet my friends at the local fast food restaurant. It's an ideal meeting place as there is lots of warmth. Tasty food (which my mum calls poisonous) is also available. So, it's a comfortable place to chat. Young people, like me, need a place to go and talk. We usually talk about our interests and hobbies, mine being photography. Our behaviour is typical of many teenagers, I suppose. However, my parents think I go out too often. Luckily, though, after many arguments they have begun to accept my explanation that young people need to find ways to relieve their boredom, especially if they live in a small town like I do.

**NORMAL**  
**IDEA, WARM**  
**TASTE, POISON**  
**COMFORT**  
**PHOTO**  
**ARGUE**  
**EXPLAIN, BORE**

### C Complete using the words given.

**usual** (adj): happening most often in a particular situation  
**normal** (adj): regular, ordinary, in accordance with what people expect  
**common** (adj): ordinary, frequently encountered or often happening

**raise** (v): (raise-raised-raised) lift sth, move it to a higher position (transitive)  
**rise** (v): (rise-rose-risen) move upwards, stand up (intransitive)  
**arise** (v): (arise-arose-arisen) begin to exist or become known to people (for a situation or problem)

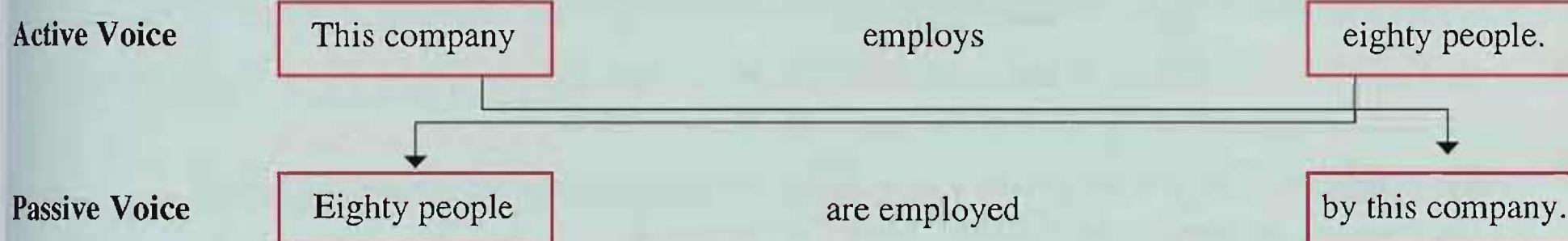
1. Hans is a very common German name.
2. Despite his disability, he leads a normal life.
3. Waiter, I'll have my usual drink.
4. No problems will arise as long as you have organised the trip well.
5. Those of you in favour of the proposal, please raise your hands.
6. We watched the hot-air balloon rise into the sky.



# unit 14 | Passive Voice

The Passive Voice stresses the action itself, not who or what caused it. Only **transitive** verbs (=verbs with an object) can be used in the passive.

## Formation



## Verb forms in the Passive Voice

Verb Forms	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present Simple	<i>They always serve tea with cakes.</i>	<i>Tea is always served with cakes (by them).</i>
Present Progressive	<i>They are renovating the hotel.</i>	<i>The hotel is being renovated.</i>
Past Simple	<i>I repaired the roof last year.</i>	<i>The roof was repaired (by me) last year.</i>
Past Progressive	<i>The scouts were pitching the tents when it started to rain.</i>	<i>The tents were being pitched by the scouts when it started to rain.</i>
Present Perfect Simple	<i>We have removed all the furniture from the living room.</i>	<i>All the furniture has been removed from the living room</i>
Past Perfect Simple	<i>The fire had destroyed the house before the fire brigade arrived.</i>	<i>The house had been destroyed by the fire before the fire brigade arrived.</i>
Future "Will"	<i>Mary will pay the bill tomorrow.</i>	<i>The bill will be paid (by Mary) tomorrow.</i>
Going to	<i>They are going to publish his new novel next month.</i>	<i>His new novel is going to be published next month.</i>
Future Perfect Simple	<i>I will have posted all the letters by noon.</i>	<i>All the letters will have been posted by noon.</i>
Present Infinitive	<i>We need to finish this work by tomorrow.</i>	<i>This work needs to be finished by tomorrow.</i>
Present Infinitive	<i>He could have bought the tickets earlier.</i>	<i>The tickets could have been bought earlier.</i>
-ing form	<i>I hate people staring at me.</i>	<i>I hate being stared at.</i>
Modal Verbs	<i>You must take him to hospital.</i>	<i>He must be taken to hospital.</i>
Imperative	<i>Please complete this exercise.</i>	<i>This exercise must / should be completed.</i>

### note

The Present, Past and Future Perfect Progressive and the Future Progressive are **not** used in the Passive Voice.



## Use

We use the Passive Voice:

- when the agent (the person performing the action) is unknown, unimportant or obvious from the context.

*This portrait was painted before the 17th century.*

*The environment is being polluted more and more every day.*

- when we want to emphasise the action itself, not the agent.

*Eight people were injured in a car accident.*

- in instructions, processes, formal statements, etc.

*The lever on the right should be pulled down slowly.*

### note

- Get** can be used instead of **be** in informal speech to show that something happened unexpectedly.  
*His jeans got caught on a spike as he was climbing over the fence.*

- By + agent** is used when we want to emphasise who does or what causes the action.

*The investigation was ordered by the Police Commissioner.*

- with + instrument/material** } describe what caused the action or what the agent used to perform it  
**of + material**

*This photograph was taken with an expensive camera.*

*The basement was flooded with water.      This cardigan is made of wool.*

### Note the following changes:

Active Voice	Passive Voice	Examples
Verbs with two objects	Both the indirect object (person) and the direct object (thing) can be used as subjects of a Passive sentence.	<i>He gave her a rose. → She was given a rose. or A rose was given to her.</i>
Question words (what, who, when, where, why, how)	Question Word + Auxiliary/Modal Verb + Subject + Past Participle • With <b>who</b> and <b>whom</b> we <b>never</b> omit <b>by</b> .	<i>Who wrote this play? → Who was this play written by? (informal) By whom was this play written? (formal)</i>
not...any → not...any of → not...anyone/anybody → not...anything →	no none of no one / nobody nothing	<i>They didn't change anything. → Nothing was changed.</i>
make hear help see, etc. } + bare infinitive	make hear help see, etc. } + full infinitive	<i>John made me leave. → I was made to leave (by John).</i>
let	be allowed to • When "let" has other meanings, it does not change in the Passive.	<i>They didn't let me go to the party. → I was not allowed to go to the party. You have to let the dog out. → The dog has to be let out.</i>
believe, consider, expect, find, hope, know, report, say, think, understand, etc.	• It + passive form of verb + that... (impersonal construction) • Subject + passive form of verb + full infinitive (personal construction)	<i>Scientists believe that this virus is deadly. → It is believed that this virus is deadly. or This virus is believed to be deadly.</i>
Verbs with prepositions	The preposition goes immediately after the verb.	<i>A car nearly knocked Jane down this morning. → Jane was nearly knocked down by a car this morning.</i>



## Grammar Practice

**A** Rewrite the following sentences using the Passive Voice. More than one answer is possible in some cases.

1. Everyone knows that fruit and vegetables are high in water content.  
It is known that fruit and vegetables are high in water content./Fruit and vegetables are known to be high in water content.
2. Mr and Mrs Philips didn't buy anything from the supermarket.  
Nothing was bought from the supermarket by Mr and Mrs Philips.
3. They first published this book in 1867.  
This book was first published in 1867.
4. What did they say about the accident?  
What was said about the accident?
5. They saw the President leave by the back door.  
The President was seen to leave by the back door.
6. The nurse gave the patient a robe to put on.  
The patient was given a robe to put on (by the nurse)./A robe was given to the patient to put on (by the nurse).
7. The waiters didn't seat any of the guests till after the orchestra played the national anthem.  
None of the guests were seated by the waiters till after the national anthem was played by the orchestra.
8. Mike will send flowers to Jane, who is in hospital.  
Flowers will be sent to Jane, who is in hospital, by Mike./Jane, who is in hospital, will be sent flowers by Mike.
9. The government provided the refugees with food.  
The refugees were provided with food by the government./Food was provided to the refugees by the government.
10. Who designed this building?  
Who was this building designed by?
11. The painter is spraying paint on the door with a spray gun.  
Paint is being sprayed on the door with a spray gun (by the painter).
12. The hurricane has totally destroyed the town.  
The town has been totally destroyed by the hurricane.
13. We could have taken the car to the garage today.  
The car could have been taken to the garage today.
14. The children are going to organise a surprise party.  
A surprise party is going to be organised by the children.
15. Local authorities hope that people will recycle more of their garbage.  
It is hoped that people will recycle more of their garbage.

**B** Complete using the Active or the Passive Voice of the verbs in brackets.

1. Yesterday, Kelly thought (think) that she was being followed (follow), so she went (go) to the nearest police station.
2. We are staying (stay) with my parents because our house is being renovated (renovate) at the moment.
3. Two new schools will be built (build) in our area because of the growth in population. Building will start (start) next month.
4. The tables were being cleaned (clean) by the waiters when a group of tourists arrived (arrive).
5. More chocolate bars have been consumed (consume) this year than in any other year.
6. My car was repaired (repair) by the mechanic yesterday but unfortunately I crashed (crash) it into a tree this morning.



**C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

- People believe that the chairman of the committee is involved in the scandal.  
be The chairman of the committee is believed to be involved in the scandal.
- She misses her friends visiting her in the evenings.  
visited She misses being visited by her friends in the evenings.
- Why did they turn down our offer, Mr Steinberg?  
turned Why was our offer turned down, Mr Steinberg?
- The teacher didn't let us leave before we finished the essay.  
allowed We were not allowed to leave before we finished the essay.
- Nobody in my class can solve this maths problem.  
solved This maths problem can't be solved by anyone in my class.
- They were giving the dog a bath when I arrived.  
given The dog was being given a bath when I arrived.
- You know, people say that the Minister of Education is going to resign.  
is You know, it is said that the Minister of Education is going to resign.
- Karen would have sent me a letter if she had known my address.  
been I would have been sent a letter by Karen if she had known my address.

## Vocabulary Practice

**A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.**

<b>look after:</b>	take care of sb or sth
<b>look forward to:</b>	expect sth to happen because you think you will enjoy it
<b>look into:</b>	investigate, examine in detail
<b>look over:</b>	examine sth in order to get a general idea of it
<b>look up:</b>	try to find information in a book or list

- Students should have a dictionary to look up unknown words.
- We are all looking forward to going on holiday.
- Looking after old people isn't an easy job, but it's very rewarding.
- The manager briefly looked over his notes before the meeting.
- We must look into the matter before making a decision.

**B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.**

### VISITING LAS VEGAS

Las Vegas has a new attraction; the tallest American building west of the Mississippi. Its owners have high expectations of its success. The design is original and certainly different to anything ever seen before. Taller than the Eiffel Tower, the building has something for everyone. The description of what the building offers is quite amazing. The building has a casino, for which the state is famous for. Also, there is a fashionably decorated revolving restaurant, so that clients are able to see the impressive views through the glass windows. Three chapels are available for anyone who would like to get married and have a religious ceremony, 800 feet in the air. In addition, two of the highest rides are available for ride lovers. The roller coaster, 865 tracks in length, and the Space Shot ride, which goes up to the top of the tower at approximately 90 km per hour. Anyone for a go?

**ATTRACT**  
**EXPECT, ORIGIN**  
**DIFFER**  
**DESCRIBE**  
  
**FASHION**  
**IMPRESS**  
**RELIGION**  
**ADD**  
**LONG**



### C Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

<b>in future:</b>	in the time to come
<b>in general:</b>	generally
<b>in a hurry:</b>	needing to do sth quickly
<b>in love (with):</b>	loving sb or sth
<b>in a good/bad mood:</b>	feeling cheerful/angry and impatient
<b>in one's opinion:</b>	according to what sb thinks about sth
<b>in order/a mess:</b>	tidy/untidy
<b>in pain:</b>	feeling pain
<b>in particular:</b>	particularly, especially
<b>in person:</b>	personally
<b>in pieces:</b>	broken up into small parts

1. Pam left the office in a hurry. She had a train to catch.
2. The estate agent said that in general/in his opinion the house was in a reasonable condition.
3. Mrs Kay loves animals, in particular cats.
4. You're late! In future, please try to be on time for our meetings.
5. Model aeroplanes come in pieces, which you put together yourself.
6. Jenny was in pain after the accident.
7. I'm always in a bad mood when it rains. It makes me miserable.
8. Mr Fane keeps his office in order. He is very tidy.
9. I'd rather meet my clients in person than speak to them over the phone.
10. In my opinion, we should sell the flat and buy a house.
11. I fell in love with the island and decided to live there.

### D Complete using the words given.

<b>persist (in) (v):</b>	go on doing sth despite having difficulties
<b>insist (on) (v):</b>	say or demand sth very firmly and not change your mind about it
<b>resist (v):</b>	(1) refuse to accept sth (2) stop yourself from doing sth although you would like to do it

<b>tough (adj):</b>	(1) rough, violent (2) difficult to do or deal with
<b>hard (adj):</b>	(1) not soft or smooth (2) difficult to understand or do, requiring considerable effort to be accomplished
<b>demanding (adj):</b>	requiring a lot of time, effort, energy or attention

<b>beside (prep):</b>	next to
<b>besides (prep):</b>	in addition to

1. I insist you stay and have dinner with us.
2. Why do you persist in finishing the reports even though it's late?
3. I ate up the cake. I just couldn't resist it.
4. Al Capone had killed many people and was considered a tough criminal.
5. Children require a lot of care and guidance, that's why being a parent is very demanding.
6. The whole project requires a lot of hard work.
7. Besides Katie, I've also invited Jenny to the dinner party.
8. Please, place a wine glass beside every plate.



# unit | 15 | Causative Form

The Causative Form is used when we do not do something ourselves, but we arrange for someone else (usually an expert) to do it for us.

Formation						
Subject	+	Have/Get	+	Object	+	Past Participle
↓ He		↓ had		↓ his car		↓ serviced last week.

## Verb forms in the Causative Form

Verb forms	Active Voice	Causative Form
Present Simple	<i>We paint the house every year.</i>	<i>We have the house painted every year.</i>
Present Progressive	<i>Beth is washing her car.</i>	<i>Beth is having her car washed.</i>
Past Simple	<i>He typed three letters yesterday.</i>	<i>He had three letters typed yesterday.</i>
Past Progressive	<i>She was cleaning the carpet when I arrived.</i>	<i>She was having the carpet cleaned when I arrived.</i>
Future "Will"	<i>We will install the lights next week.</i>	<i>We will have the lights installed next week.</i>
Future Progressive	<i>I'll be planting some trees in the garden tomorrow morning.</i>	<i>I'll be having some trees planted in the garden tomorrow morning.</i>
Present Perfect Simple	<i>The girls have repaired their bicycles.</i>	<i>The girls have had their bicycles repaired.</i>
Present Perfect Progressive	<i>We've been importing clothes from Italy since we opened the shop.</i>	<i>We've been having clothes imported from Italy since we opened the shop.</i>
Past Perfect Simple	<i>He had organised the meeting before I called.</i>	<i>He had had the meeting organised before I called.</i>
Past Perfect Progressive	<i>They had been photocopying a book when the manager arrived.</i>	<i>They had been having a book photocopied when the manager arrived.</i>
Present Infinitive	<i>He managed to repair the roof.</i>	<i>He managed to have the roof repaired.</i>
-ing form	<i>I remember taking my blood pressure.</i>	<i>I remember having my blood pressure taken.</i>
Modal verbs	<i>You should fix the leakage in the tank.</i>	<i>You should have the leakage in the tank fixed.</i>
Imperative	<i>Clean the table, please.</i>	<i>Have the table cleaned, please.</i>

### note

- Questions and negations are formed as in the Active Voice: with the auxiliaries **do/does** in the Present Simple and **did** in the Past Simple.  
*When did you last have your eyes tested?*
- We can use **get** instead of **have**, especially in informal style.  
*I have to get the house painted this year.*
- The Causative Form is often used instead of the Passive Voice to express an accident, a misfortune or something that had not been arranged:  
*They had their house broken into last week.*  
*Mark had his leg broken in the car crash.*
- If we want to mention who performs the action, we can add **by+agent** at the end of the sentence.  
*She always has her hair dyed by a hairdresser.*



- **make/have someone do something** = cause someone to do something (but there is a slight difference in meaning)  
Mrs Smith made her husband do the shopping. (=She insisted that her husband should do the shopping)  
Mrs Smith had her husband do the shopping. (=She asked her husband to do the shopping)
- **get someone to do something** = persuade someone to do something  
Mrs Smith got her husband to do the shopping. (=She persuaded her husband to do the shopping)

## Grammar Practice

### A Choose the correct answers.

- Brian will \_\_\_\_\_ by the dentist tomorrow.  
 a. get his teeth polished      b. polish his teeth      c. have his teeth polish
- When \_\_\_\_\_ your new carpet fitted?  
 a. had you       b. did you have      c. you had
- He often \_\_\_\_\_ at the dry cleaner's.  
 a. has his suits cleaned      b. has cleaned his suits      c. cleans his suits
- Debbie knows how to sew and \_\_\_\_\_ herself.  
 a. has all her dresses made      b. gets all her dresses made       c. makes all her dresses
- Please, \_\_\_\_\_ the accounts checked by the accountant first thing tomorrow morning.  
 a. you have       b. have      c. will have
- Jake \_\_\_\_\_ his passport renewed last week.  
 a. didn't have      b. hadn't      c. not had
- We postponed \_\_\_\_\_ because we didn't have enough money.  
 a. having painted our house      b. have painted our house       c. having our house painted
- She \_\_\_\_\_ while shopping yesterday.  
 a. had stolen her wallet      b. stole her wallet       c. had her wallet stolen
- The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ the board.  
 a. had John clean      b. had John cleaned      c. had John to clean
- If you feel dizzy, you should \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. your blood pressure have checked       b. have your blood pressure checked      c. checked your blood pressure
- I always \_\_\_\_\_ to my friends living abroad because I like to keep in touch with them.  
 a. have e-mails sent       b. send e-mails      c. have e-mails sent
- I would like to \_\_\_\_\_ for me, as I'm an awful cook.  
 a. have my cooking done      b. having my cooking done      c. have done my cooking
- Macey \_\_\_\_\_ her organise a party at her house.  
 a. got me help      b. got me helped       c. got me to help
- \_\_\_\_\_ your newspaper delivered to your house every morning?  
 a. Have       b. Do you have      c. Do you



## B Complete using the Active Voice or the Causative Form of the words given.

1. Mr Fane: Are you using the computer?

Mr Parker: Yes, I am typing my letters (my letters / type) at the moment.

Mr Fane: Do you type all your letters yourself?

Mr Parker: No, I don't have the time to do that. I usually have my letters typed (my letters / type) by my secretary, but she's away today.

2. Macey: I had my car serviced (my car / service) by the mechanic yesterday. The bad thing is that I had to pay quite a lot of money for it.

Luke: Didn't you know that my brother is training to become a mechanic? He always services my car (my car / service) for me. Maybe he could have a look at yours next time, too.

3. Tanya: What are you doing? Are you painting the house (the house / paint) yourself?

Brenda: No, of course not. I am having the house painted (the house / paint) by a painter. I'm just helping him. Do you want to come in and have a look?

## C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Please, arrange for these parcels to be posted as soon as possible.

**have** Please, have these parcels posted as soon as possible.

2. My car will need servicing before I go on holiday.

**get** I'll need to get my car serviced before I go on holiday.

3. Someone broke Gary's front teeth while he was playing football.

**had** Gary had his front teeth broken while he was playing football.

4. Betty eventually agreed to lend me her motorbike for the day.

**got** I eventually got Betty to lend me her motorbike for the day.

5. A plumber is repairing my dishwasher this afternoon.

**repaired** I am having my dishwasher repaired this afternoon.

6. Kelly, does the cleaner clean your house twice a week?

**have** Kelly, do you have your house cleaned twice a week?

7. A bank clerk was cashing my cheque when the robbers entered the bank.

**cashed** I was having my cheque cashed when the robbers entered the bank.

8. I haven't been to the hairdresser's for a haircut lately.

**cut** I haven't had my hair cut lately.

## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

**make for:** go towards a place

**make out:** manage (with difficulty) to see, hear or understand sth

**make up:** (1) invent a story or excuse  
(2) become friends again after a quarrel or disagreement

**mix up:** confuse people or things

**move in:** begin to live in a house or place

**move out:** stop living in a house or place and go somewhere else

1. I always mix up the oil and the vinegar because they are in similar bottles.

2. Mark moved out of the flat after an argument with his flatmate.

3. We quickly made for the barn when it started raining.

4. Don't believe anything he says. He's always making up stories.

5. Could you speak up, please? I can't make out what you're saying.

6. We've got the keys to our new house and tomorrow we're going to move in.



**B Complete using prepositions.**

1. I kept thinking of/about the accident all night long.
2. Pet owners care for/about their pets a great deal.
3. Could you take care of little Jimmy tonight?
4. You can rely on your good friends when you need them.
5. I have a need for coffee in the morning.
6. Teachers feel responsible for the progress of their students.
7. I'm very thankful for all your help.
8. Teachers must learn to be patient with their troublesome students.
9. You should take responsibility for your actions.
10. The amount of food you make depends on the number of guests you're expecting.
11. I'd like to thank you for the gift you gave me.
12. She was grateful to him for helping her out at such a bad time.

**C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.****SSH, LET THEM SLEEP!**

The discovery that a member of your family is sleepwalking may be alarming, but it is not an uncommon phenomenon. Both adults and children sleepwalk, however it is more common in children.

Sleepwalking is not a psychological disorder, as some may think. Nor is there any connection between dreams and sleepwalking. The explanation which experts give for sleepwalking is that it is mainly due to being tired and under a lot of stress. Anxiety, pressure at work or at school or even the loss of a favourite possession could trigger it off.

Sleepwalkers move easily around the house despite the darkness, sometimes opening drawers as if searching for something. It is difficult to wake up a sleepwalker and it is considered unwise because it can cause great distress. The following morning the sleepwalker doesn't usually remember anything.

**DISCOVER****ALARM****ORDER****CONNECT****TIRE****ANXIOUS, PRESS****POSSESS****DARK****WISE****D Complete using the words given.**

<b>ancient</b> (adj):	of the distant past
<b>antique</b> (adj):	made in the style of an earlier period
<b>old-fashioned</b> (adj):	no longer fashionable
<b>traditional</b> (adj):	in accordance with tradition
<b>elderly</b> (adj):	quite old, past middle age (for people)
<b>old</b> (adj):	no longer young or new
<b>mature</b> (adj):	(1) fully developed in personality and behaviour (2) when sth is left for a time to allow its full flavour to develop (usually for wine or cheese)
<b>ripe</b> (adj):	fully grown and ready to be eaten or used (usually for fruit)

1. My grandfather is very active even though he is old.
2. My father buys antique furniture, restores it and then sells it at a profit.
3. This is traditional Irish music. Do you like it?
4. In ancient times, people believed there were many gods.
5. My grandmother still makes jam in the good old-fashioned way.
6. An elderly/old couple won the trip to Hawaii.
7. Ripe bananas are great for making banana cake.
8. Jane is very mature for a fifteen-year-old.



# unit | 16 | Conditionals

## Type 1: Real situations in the present or future.

If clause	Main clause	Use
If + Present Tense (simple or continuous) or Present Perfect Simple (if the action has already finished)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Future tense <i>If Martin gets the job, he will move to Oxford.</i></li> <li>can/may/might/must/should + infinitive <i>If you have finished your homework, you may go out with your friends.</i></li> <li>Present Simple <i>If you mix blue and yellow, you get green.</i></li> <li>Imperative <i>If you miss the train, take the bus.</i></li> </ul>	<p>real or probable situations in the present or future</p> <p>general truths (if=when, whenever)</p> <p>instructions or commands</p>

### note

- If-clauses either precede or follow the main clause. If they precede the main clause, we separate them with a comma.  
*If you eat a lot of sweets, you'll gain weight.*  
**BUT:** *You'll gain weight if you eat a lot of sweets.*
- If there is only a slight possibility of something happening, we can use **should**.  
*If you should ever go to Colombia, visit the Museum of Gold in Bogota.*  
In this case, **if** can be omitted; **should** comes before the subject (inversion).  
*Should you ever go to Colombia, visit the Museum of Gold in Bogota.*

## Type 2: Unreal situations in the present or future.

If clause	Main clause	Use
If + Past Tense (simple or continuous)	<p>would could might } + present infinitive</p> <p><i>If he were still living with his parents, he would be able to save more money.</i></p> <p><i>If I won a lot of money, I would spend most of it travelling round the world.</i></p> <p><i>If I were you, I wouldn't argue with my employer.</i></p>	<p>unreal or imaginary situations in the present</p> <p>events that are unlikely to happen in the future</p> <p>to give advice</p>

### note

- We use **were** instead of **was** in type 2 conditional sentences in formal English.  
*If he were not so lazy, he would be more successful.*
- If** can be omitted when it is followed by **were**; **were** comes before the subject (inversion).  
*Were she taller, she could become a model. (=if she were taller, ...)*
- We can use **will/would** in the if-clause (Type 1 +2 conditional sentences) to express desire, willingness, politeness, insistence, annoyance, uncertainty or to make a request.  
*If you will keep on being so noisy, I'll have to report you.*  
*I would appreciate it if you would turn the radio down.*



**Type 3: Unreal situations in the past.**

If clause	Main clause	Use
If + Past Perfect (simple or continuous)	would could might } + perfect infinitive  <i>If he had known your phone number, he would have called you.</i>  <i>If I had been more careful, I would have passed the driving test.</i>	for actions that did not happen  to express criticism or regret

**note**

**If** can sometimes be omitted; **had** comes before the subject (inversion).

*Had you arrived earlier, you would have met my grandmother. (= If you had arrived earlier...)*

**Mixed conditionals**

Mixed conditionals do not follow the tense rules strictly; we can make combinations according to the context:

*If I had a car, I would have picked you up from the airport. (Types 2, 3)*

*If you had taken some aspirin, you would feel better now. (Types 3, 2)*

**note**

Conditionals can be introduced with other expressions instead of if:

- **unless** (= if not),  
e.g. *Unless you hurry, you'll miss the bus.*
  - **as long as/provided/providing** (= only if),  
e.g. *You can borrow my camera as long as you promise to handle it with care.*  
*You can visit me anytime provided/providing (that) you call me in advance.*
  - **in case**,  
e.g. *I'll buy some mineral water in case I get thirsty (= I'll buy some mineral water before I get thirsty.)*  
**But:** *I'll buy some mineral water if I get thirsty (= I'll buy some mineral water when I get thirsty.)*
  - **on condition (that)** (= provided),  
e.g. *On condition (that) she passes her exam, her parents will let her go to Italy for the holidays.*
  - **but for** (= if it wasn't/hadn't been for),  
e.g. *But for the rain, we would have enjoyed the picnic.*
  - **or else** (= if not/otherwise),  
e.g. *Hurry up, or else we'll miss the train.*
  - **Suppose/Supposing** (= imagine if),  
e.g. *Suppose/Supposing the lights went out, what would we do?*
  - **only if**,  
e.g. *She will go to the party only if she has finished her work.*
  - **even if**,  
e.g. *He wouldn't talk about his plans even if you begged him to.*
  - **whether**,  
e.g. *Whether he agrees with me or not is not important to me.*
- ▶ We never use the Future "Will" after these structures, except for **or else** and **whether**.



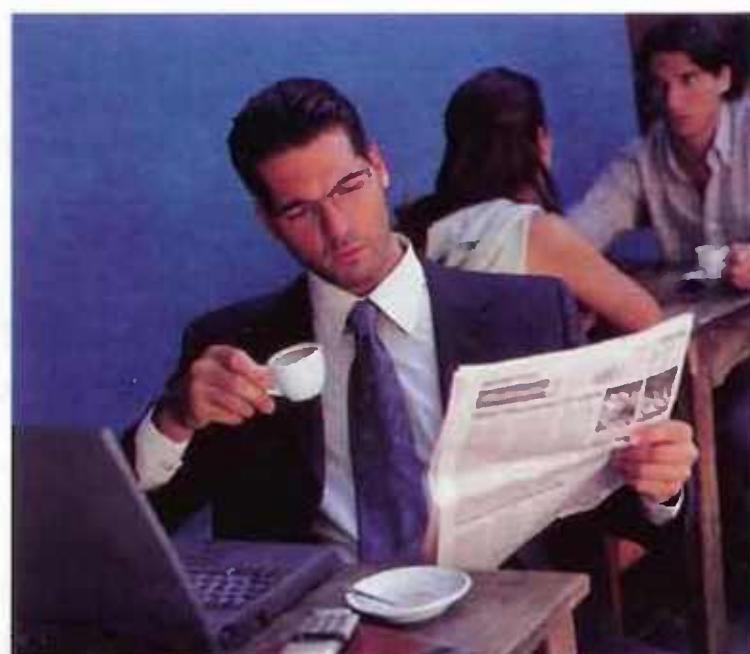
# Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

- If you \_\_\_\_\_ the Louvre while in Paris, buy me a poster.  
a. visited                      **b. should visit**                      c. have visited
- If I had installed an alarm, the thieves wouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ able to break into my house last week.  
a. be                              b. had been                      **c. have been**
- If I \_\_\_\_\_ the job, I will take you out to dinner on Saturday to celebrate.  
a. have got                      **b. get**                              c. got
- I would make a film with Leonardo DiCaprio if I \_\_\_\_\_ a famous director, but I'm not.  
**a. were**                              b. had been                      c. will be
- Karen \_\_\_\_\_ for Athens tomorrow providing the weather is fine.  
**a. will leave**                      b. would leave                      c. had left
- If I were in your shoes, I \_\_\_\_\_ to them.  
a. will apologise                      b. had apologised                      **c. would apologise**
- If you \_\_\_\_\_ the application to the company on time, they might have called you for an interview. I can't understand why you didn't!  
a. send                              **b. had sent**                              c. will send

## B Make sentences using conditionals.

- The lift may not work so use the stairs.  
If the lift doesn't work (isn't working), use the stairs.
- I want a new car but I can't save up enough money.  
If I could save up enough money, I would buy a new car.
- This isn't a very good camera. The photos I took aren't very clear.  
If this were a better camera, the photos I took would have been clearer.
- I think that you shouldn't drink so much coffee.  
If I were you, I wouldn't drink so much coffee.
- We didn't have your address so we didn't send you a Christmas card.  
If we had had your address, we would have sent you a Christmas card.
- The bus drivers might be on strike tomorrow, so I'll probably catch a taxi.  
If the bus drivers are on strike tomorrow, I'll catch (I may catch) a taxi.



## C Complete using mixed conditionals.

- He wouldn't be (not be) ill today if he hadn't walked (not walk) home in the rain last night.
- You've been playing with that cat for hours. If you were (be) allergic to cats, you would have known (know) by now.
- If they caught (catch) a taxi, they will be (be) here any minute now.
- We wouldn't be (not be) stuck here now if you had taken (take) the car to the garage before we left for our holiday.
- If I were (be) you, I wouldn't have sold (not sell) my car before I bought another one. How will you get to work now?



**D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

- If she doesn't follow a stricter diet, she won't lose any weight.  
**unless** She won't lose any weight unless she follows a stricter diet.
- I wouldn't have succeeded if my parents hadn't encouraged and supported me.  
**but** I wouldn't have succeeded but for my parents' encouragement and support.
- He has twisted his ankle, so he can't play tennis this afternoon.  
**not** Had he not twisted his ankle, he would have been able to play tennis this afternoon.
- We didn't follow the directions, that's why we got lost.  
**would** We would not have got lost if we had followed the directions.
- You should read more to improve your vocabulary; that's what I'd do.  
**were** If I were you, I would read more to improve my vocabulary.
- Jenny can get a puppy only if she promises to take care of it.  
**long** Jenny can get a puppy as long as she promises to take care of it.
- I wouldn't mind being transferred to another city if they offered me a higher salary.  
**condition** I wouldn't mind being transferred to another city on condition (that) they offered me a higher salary.
- Fortunately, they were wearing seat belts, so nobody was seriously injured.  
**not** If they had not been wearing seat belts, they could have been seriously injured.

## Vocabulary Practice

**A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.**

**pay back:** give back money you have borrowed  
**pay off:** give sb back all the money you owe them  
**point out:** draw sb's attention to sth  
**pull down:** demolish  
**pull over:** move closer to the side of the road and stop (for vehicles)

- John pointed out his old school friend in the photograph.
- The policeman asked him to pull over for a breathalyser test.
- I'll give you the money, but when will you pay me back ?
- That building will be pulled down next week.
- It will take me two years to pay off/back my loan.

**B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.**

### LION KING

The lion is known as the king of the jungle. Perhaps this is because of its size, strength and ability to run up to 35 mph.

**STRONG, ABLE**

Yet, for twenty hours a day, the lion just lies under the sun doing nothing. However, when it gets hungry, its manner changes and it becomes threatening. Its only intention is to satisfy its enormous appetite.

**HUNGER, THREAT  
INTEND**

In its natural surroundings, the lion will eat anything, from rats to animals as large as giraffes. But zebra meat provides the lion with the greatest satisfaction.

**SURROUND  
SATISFY**

Lions live in groups called prides. The lioness is truly amazing. She is quicker than the male. She is so caring that she will hunt and look after her young for two years before they become independent.

**TRUE  
CARE  
DEPEND**



### C Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

<b>in practice/theory:</b>	actually happening/ theoretically
<b>in private/public:</b>	without/with the presence of others
<b>in reality:</b>	actually, in fact
<b>in secret:</b>	secretly
<b>in the shade/sun:</b>	protected from/ exposed to sunlight
<b>in tears:</b>	crying
<b>in time (for):</b>	early or at the appointed time
<b>in touch (with):</b>	in contact with sb
<b>in uniform:</b>	wearing the same special clothes as everyone else at work or school
<b>in a loud/low voice:</b>	loudly/quietly
<b>in the way:</b>	when sb or sth stops you from moving forward or seeing clearly
<b>in other words:</b>	saying sth differently

- The mayor hasn't been seen in public for some time.
- Do you keep in touch with your old school friends?
- Martha looked very upset. I saw her running out of the office in tears.
- Your idea works in theory, but not in practice.
- You've arrived just in time for lunch.
- Could you help me move this table? It's in the way.
- Nobody knew about our affair. We used to meet once a week in secret.
- The children should all be in uniform for the parade.
- The mirrors made the room look bigger, but in reality it was quite small.
- You shouldn't stay in the sun for too long, you'll get burnt.
- Your car isn't reliable enough for a long trip, in other words, you'd better not take it.
- I can't hear you very well. Could you repeat that in a loud(er) voice?

### D Complete using the words given.

<b>vacant</b> (adj):	not being used or occupied (e.g. hotel room, job position)
<b>free</b> (adj):	not being used or occupied by sb or not reserved for sb to use (e.g. table, seat)
<b>empty</b> (adj):	with no people or things in it
<b>deserted</b> (adj):	becoming empty because everybody has left
<b>left</b> (adj):	what remains after the rest has gone or been used
<b>abandoned</b> (adj):	no longer used or occupied (e.g. building)

<b>alone</b> (adj):	not with any other person
<b>lonely</b> (adj):	unhappy because you are alone
<b>single</b> (adj):	not married

<b>alive</b> (adj):	living, not dead (not followed by a noun)
<b>live</b> (adj):	(event, performance or programme) being broadcast exactly at the time it happens, not recorded in advance
<b>lively</b> (adj):	full of energy or enthusiasm
<b>living</b> (adj):	alive, not dead (followed by a noun)

- This box is empty. Can I put the rubbish in it?
- We must buy some more cheese, there's only a small piece left.
- I'm sorry. We have no more vacant rooms. The hotel is full.
- The bandits hid in the abandoned/empty/  
deserted warehouse.
- The only free table we have is the one in the corner.
- It was 1:00 a.m. and the usually busy street was now quiet and deserted/empty.
- All my friends are married except Kate, who is still single.
- I get really lonely at Christmas because all my family live abroad.
- Mr Jones came to the party alone as his wife was away on business.
- The football match was broadcast live in thirty countries.
- The rock group gave a lively performance on stage.
- The wounded bird was barely alive.
- The old man said that life during the war was a living nightmare.



## Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. If you \_\_\_\_\_ a flight, would you have gone by train?  
 a. haven't booked      b. don't book       c. hadn't booked      d. won't book
2. Here are your photos. We \_\_\_\_\_ at the photographer's.  
 a. got them developed      b. develop them      c. got developed them      d. got them develop
3. Betty \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of presents on her birthday.  
 a. was been given      b. gave      c. was giving       d. was given
4. The dog must \_\_\_\_\_ to the vet.  
 a. taken       b. be taken      c. be take      d. take
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Diana, congratulate her for me, will you?  
 a. Should you saw      b. If should you see       c. Should you see      d. If you saw
6. My son told me he tied his shoes by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. him       b. himself      c. his      d. his own
7. We have had the roof of our house \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. to replace      b. replace      c. been replaced       d. replaced
8. Sue \_\_\_\_\_ by the police all night.  
 a. was being questioned      b. was questioning      c. is being questioned      d. had questioned
9. Kev \_\_\_\_\_ into the tree if the brakes on his bike had been working.  
 a. wouldn't crash      b. won't crash      c. won't have crashed       d. wouldn't have crashed
10. Jack \_\_\_\_\_ last night.  
 a. had stolen his wallet      b. his wallet stolen       c. had his wallet stolen      d. has stolen his wallet
11. I'll lend you my car \_\_\_\_\_ you promise to drive carefully.  
 a. as long as      b. unless      c. even if      d. whether
12. If I \_\_\_\_\_ a house like that, I'd look after it better.  
 a. had owned      b. have owned       c. owned      d. own
13. He got his brother \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes.  
 a. to wash      b. wash      c. washing      d. to have washed
14. Don't go out by \_\_\_\_\_ at night. It's dangerous.  
 a. myself       b. yourself      c. me      d. her
15. I'll find you \_\_\_\_\_ you go.  
 a. whatever      b. whichever      c. whenever       d. wherever



**B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

- She has arranged to work this afternoon, so she can't come shopping with us.  
**not** Had she not arranged to work this afternoon, she would have been able to come shopping with us.
- Someone has stolen my bike, Dad.  
**had** I have had my bike stolen, Dad.
- People expect that the weather will change soon.  
**to** The weather is expected to change soon.
- I wouldn't mind contacting her but I don't have her phone number.  
**would** I would contact her if I had her phone number.
- When did they replace the broken windows, Annie?  
**replaced** When were the broken windows replaced, Annie?
- You are all welcome to have some more cake.  
**help** Feel free to help yourselves to some more cake.
- Chris, I shall be glad to show you round if you decide to visit London.  
**should** Chris, if you should/should you decide to visit London, I shall be glad to show you round.
- We've asked an electrician to install lights in the garden.  
**have** We will have an electrician install lights in the garden.

## Vocabulary Practice

**A Choose the correct answers.**

- I'm really \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas this year.  
a. looking after      b. looking out for      c. looking into      **d. looking forward to**
- It's raining! Quick, let's make \_\_\_\_\_ that shop.  
a. out      b. up      c. in      **d. for**
- During the month of August, Athens is almost \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. vacant      b. abandoned      c. left      **d. deserted**
- After the break, we'll \_\_\_\_\_ with chapter three of the book.  
a. insist      b. persist      c. keep      **d. continue**
- This is a valuable \_\_\_\_\_ chair which dates back to the eighteenth century.  
**a. antique**      b. old-fashioned      c. ancient      d. traditional
- My job is so \_\_\_\_\_ that I don't think I'll be able to take a summer break.  
**a. demanding**      b. persisting      c. hard      d. tough
- Is he \_\_\_\_\_ enough to take on so much responsibility?  
a. elderly      b. ancient      c. ripe      **d. mature**
- Billy the Kid was wanted dead or \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. live      **b. alive**      c. lively      d. living
- I went to Spain on holiday \_\_\_\_\_, but I made a lot of friends there.  
a. single      **b. alone**      c. lonely      d. free
- You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ up all the unknown words in the dictionary.  
a. point      b. make      c. mix      **d. look**
- The room was in a \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. hurry      **b. mess**      c. mood      d. shade



12. His handwriting is so difficult to read. I can hardly \_\_\_\_\_ what he's written.  
 (a) make out                      b. make up                      c. look into                      d. point out
13. If you have a problem, don't hesitate to \_\_\_\_\_ your hand.  
 (a) raise                      b. rise                      c. arise                      d. rised
14. Mike was \_\_\_\_\_ after he broke his leg.  
 a. in love                      b. in order                      (c) in pain                      d. in person
15. Please don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_ the money you have borrowed from me.  
 a. pull over                      (b) pay back                      c. point out                      d. pull down

### B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| 1. John couldn't give a logical <u>explanation</u> as to why he had arrived so late.                  | <b>EXPLAIN</b>  |
| 2. The eyewitness gave an accurate <u>description</u> of the bank robber.                             | <b>DESCRIBE</b> |
| 3. For <u>additional</u> information on flight times and package holidays, contact your travel agent. | <b>ADD</b>      |
| 4. We lost most of our <u>possessions</u> in the flood.   | <b>POSSESS</b>  |
| 5. I was <u>unable</u> to carry my luggage, so I had to use a trolley.                                | <b>ABLE</b>     |
| 6. The attic is in <u>disorder</u> . Let's tidy it up.  | <b>ORDER</b>    |
| 7. Alice had a <u>tiring</u> day at work and went to bed early.                                       | <b>TIRE</b>     |
| 8. He got the <u>impression</u> that the situation was out of control.                                | <b>IMPRESS</b>  |

### C Choose the correct answers.

My friend Sarah wanted to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ her house painted, but she didn't want to do it (2) \_\_\_\_\_. So, she decided to call the number of a painting company she had seen on an advertisement that (3) \_\_\_\_\_ left on her car. A young man answered the phone, and Sarah told him about her house. An appointment (4) \_\_\_\_\_ for the following Thursday. When the day came, a knock (5) \_\_\_\_\_ on Susan's door. When Susan opened it, she saw two twelve-year-old boys standing in front of (6) \_\_\_\_\_! She was caught by surprise! They explained that they had wanted to earn some extra money for (7) \_\_\_\_\_, so they had created and handed out the ad. If Susan (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the painters were twelve, she never would have called to begin with! She told them she was sorry, but she preferred to have her house painted by professionals.

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| 1. (a) have<br>b. having had<br>c. having<br>d. have had     | 4. a. was being made<br>b. will be made<br>(c) was made<br>d. was making   | 7. a. itself<br>b. them<br>c. him<br>(d) themselves                   |
| 2. a. her<br>b. she<br>(c) herself<br>d. hers                | 5. a. had been heard<br>b. having heard<br>c. was hearing<br>(d) was heard | 8. a. would have known<br>(b) had known<br>c. knows<br>d. was to know |
| 3. a. was being<br>(b) had been<br>c. having been<br>d. were | 6. (a) her<br>b. she<br>c. it<br>d. them                                   |   |



## A. Unreal Past

Past tenses referring to unreal situations are called Unreal Past. The **Past Simple** can refer to untrue or imaginary situations in the **present** or **future**, while the **Past Perfect Simple** can refer to unreal situations in the **past**.

## Unreal past with present or future time reference

Structure	Use	Examples
If + Past Tense	Type 2 Conditional	<i>If I had a car, I would drive to work.</i>
Imagine Suppose Supposing } + Past Tense	imaginary situations in the present or future	<i>Suppose you lived in a small village, would you miss the city?</i>
wish If only } + Past Tense	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>wish about a present situation that we would like to be different</li> <li>► <b>If only</b> is stronger than <b>wish</b>.</li> </ul>	<i>I wish I lived in the country. (I don't.)</i> <i>If only I were on holiday.</i>
wish If only } + would + infinitive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>to express annoyance, irritation, dissatisfaction</li> <li>to make a wish concerning a present situation which is unlikely to change</li> <li>► The subject of <b>would</b> must be different from the subject of <b>wish</b>.</li> </ul>	<i>I wish he wouldn't smoke in the office.</i> <i>I wish time wouldn't pass so quickly!</i>
wish If only } + could + infinitive	to make a wish or express our regret about sth we cannot do at present.	<i>She wishes she could speak French. (she can't.)</i>
as if as though } + Past Tense	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>untrue situations in the present</li> <li>► <b>Were</b> is used instead of <b>was</b>.</li> </ul>	<i>He speaks as if he were a foreigner. (He is not.)</i>
It's time It's about time It's high time } + Past Tense	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>to indicate that the time has come for someone to do something</li> <li>to express criticism or a complaint about sth that should have already been done</li> <li>► <b>It's about time/it's high time</b> are stronger than <b>It's time</b>.</li> <li>► <b>It's time + infinitive</b>: it is the right time (for sb) to do something</li> </ul>	<i>It's time we went home.</i> <i>It's time they started working.</i> <i>It's about time we got rid of this old car!</i> <i>It's time to tidy up.</i> <i>It's time for them to start working.</i>

## Unreal past with past time reference

If + Past perfect	Type 3 Conditional	<i>If she had worked harder, she would have been promoted.</i>
wish If only } + Past Perfect	to express sorrow or regret about sth that did or did not happen in the past	<i>I wish I had remembered her birthday. (I didn't.)</i>
as if as though } + Past Perfect	unreal situations in the past	<i>He talked to everyone as if he had known them for years.</i>
Imagine Suppose Supposing } + Past Perfect	imaginary situations in the past	<i>Suppose he hadn't fled his country, would he be in prison now?</i>



## note

- **wish** can also go with an infinitive (meaning **want**) or a noun:

*She wishes to speak to the headmaster.*

*We wish you happiness.*

- **wish** is used for unreal or improbable situations; **hope** is used for possible situations.

*I wish you were here.*

*I hope to see you when I come to London.*

## B. Would rather (= I would prefer)

If the subject of **would rather** is the same as the subject of the main verb:

	Time Reference	Structure	Examples
Affirmative	Present/Future	would rather + present bare infinitive	<i>She'd rather stay at home tonight.</i>
	Past	would rather + perfect bare infinitive	<i>I'd rather have travelled to Egypt last winter.</i>
Negative	Present/Future	would rather + not + present bare infinitive	<i>I'd rather not eat any more today.</i>
	Past	would rather + not + perfect bare infinitive	<i>Nick would rather not have gone to the party yesterday.</i>

If the subject of **would rather** is different from the subject of the main verb:

Present/Future	would rather + subject + Past Simple (affirmative or negative form)	<i>I'd rather you left your umbrella outside. I'd rather you didn't smoke in the office.</i>
Past	would rather + subject + Past Perfect (affirmative or negative form)	<i>I'd rather you had informed me earlier. I'd rather she hadn't borrowed my bicycle.</i>

## Synonymous expressions

Structure	Examples
• prefer + -ing/noun + to + -ing/noun	<i>He prefers swimming to scuba diving.</i>
• prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive (general preference)	<i>She prefers to travel by plane rather than (travel) by boat.</i>
• would prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive (preference in a particular situation)	<i>I would prefer to go to the cinema rather than stay at home.</i>

## note

- **would rather + bare infinitive + than + bare infinitive**

*I'd rather walk than go by bus.*

- **would sooner** is used in the same way as **would rather**.

*I'd sooner we left earlier. (present/future time reference)*

*He'd sooner she hadn't spent so much money on clothes. (past time reference)*

## C. Had better (= should)

**Had better** expresses strong advice, a warning or a threat and is stronger than **should** and **ought to**.

Its subject is always the same as the subject of the main verb.

Time Reference	Structure	Examples
Present / Future	had better + (not) + present bare infinitive	<i>He'd better see a doctor as soon as possible. You'd better not drive so fast.</i>
Past	It would have been better if + Past Perfect	<i>It would have been better if you hadn't argued with him last week.</i>



# Grammar Practice

## A Write sentences using *wish* or *If only*.

1. My sister always takes my car without asking me. She's so inconsiderate.

2. Our luggage was stolen from our hotel room. We should have insured it.

3. I found a puppy. I want to keep it but my parents won't let me.

4. I woke up late and missed my flight to Rome.

5. Everyone in my family can paint or draw, but I'm not artistic at all.



I wish/If only my sister didn't/wouldn't take my car without asking me. I wish/If only my sister wasn't/weren't so inconsiderate.

I wish/If only our luggage hadn't been stolen.

I wish/If only we had insured our luggage.

I wish/If only I could keep the puppy I found.

I wish/If only my parents would let/let me keep the puppy I found.

I wish/If only I hadn't woken up late. I wish/If only I hadn't missed my flight to Rome.

I wish/If only I were artistic. I wish/If only I could paint or draw.

## B Choose the correct answers.

- You had better \_\_\_\_\_ in here. The fire alarm might go off.  
 a. not smoke                       b. to not smoke                       c. not smoked
- Imagine you \_\_\_\_\_ the opportunity to become a guitarist. What would you have done?  
 a. not had                       b. don't have                       c. hadn't had
- I would rather you \_\_\_\_\_ her about the situation. Now she's very worried.  
 a. not have told                       b. didn't tell                       c. hadn't told
- It's time \_\_\_\_\_. Don't you think?  
 a. to have left                       b. to leave                       c. we had left
- I get along with my brother but I wish he \_\_\_\_\_ his clothes lying around the house.  
 a. couldn't leave                       b. hadn't left                       c. wouldn't leave
- After our argument she acted as if nothing \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. had happened                       b. would happen                       c. has happened
- He would rather \_\_\_\_\_ pizza. He didn't like the spaghetti.  
 a. ordered                       b. have ordered                       c. had ordered
- I'd prefer \_\_\_\_\_ tea rather than coffee, if you don't mind.  
 a. have                       b. to have                       c. having
- I've got a terrible headache. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ to bed late last night.  
 a. hadn't gone                       b. didn't go                       c. wouldn't go
- I really liked our day trip to the countryside. I wish we \_\_\_\_\_ again next week.  
 a. going                       b. went                       c. could go



## C Choose the correct answers.

### SMOKING IN PUBLIC PLACES

I'm not a smoker and I prefer (1) \_\_\_\_\_ around non-smokers rather than smokers. In fact, I think it's about time they (2) \_\_\_\_\_ smoking. I hear smokers talk about smoking as though it (3) \_\_\_\_\_ harmless but we all know the damage it can cause. Why should I have to put up with it in public places? If only people (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the consequences of smoking, they might not take up the habit in the first place. The government had better (5) \_\_\_\_\_ action soon. It's time they (6) \_\_\_\_\_ smoking everywhere. The rate of lung-cancer related deaths is increasing every year.

1.  a. to be  
b. be  
c. having been

3.  a. were  
b. be  
c. had been

5. a. be taking  
 b. take  
c. taken

2. a. are banning  
 b. banned  
c. had banned

4. a. consider  
 b. considered  
c. have considered

6.  a. prohibited  
b. will prohibit  
c. have prohibited

## D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Jeremy regrets not having accepted the job he was offered.

**wishes** Jeremy wishes he had accepted (hadn't rejected) the job he was offered.

2. If you had heard the politician speak, you'd think he had won the elections.

**though** The politician spoke as though he had won the elections.

3. I think you should get a haircut!

**about** It's about time you got a haircut!

4. I can't stand Betty borrowing my clothes without asking me first.

**rather** I would rather Betty didn't borrow my clothes without asking me first.

5. It's a pity governments spend so much money on nuclear weapons.

**wouldn't** I wish governments wouldn't spend so much money on nuclear weapons.

6. I advise you to see the dentist today, otherwise your toothache will get worse.

**better** You had better see the dentist today, otherwise your toothache will get worse.

7. It would have been better to have hired a car during the holidays.

**only** If only we had hired a car during the holidays.

8. I would like to know how to play the piano.

**knew** I wish I knew how to play the piano.



## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the phrasal verbs given.

<b>put aside:</b>	keep sth to be dealt with or used at a later time
<b>put away:</b>	store sth tidily where it is usually kept
<b>put off:</b>	postpone
<b>put on:</b>	(1) wear (clothes) (2) gain weight
<b>put out:</b>	extinguish (a cigarette or fire)
<b>put up:</b>	offer hospitality
<b>put up with:</b>	tolerate or accept sth unpleasant

- I always put on weight during the winter.
- One thing I can't put up with is rudeness.
- You shouldn't put off the meeting with Mr Brown.
- Luckily, the fire brigade came quickly and put out the fire.
- Every summer I put up my friends who come from Australia.
- You can play with the toys as long as you put them away after you've finished playing with them.
- I always put money aside for the holidays.

### B Complete using prepositions.

- Do you believe in ghosts?
- You'll find the information about/on prehistoric animals in the encyclopaedia.
- I insist on paying for dinner.
- The employees were unaware of the financial problems the company was having.
- I always listen to the news in the morning.
- Are you certain of/about the time our flight leaves?
- Kim is familiar with most of the computer programmes on the market.
- We haven't heard from Jane for weeks.
- Mr Kent had no knowledge of your whereabouts.
- Did you inform them of/about the new plan?
- Were you serious about buying a yacht?
- I knew nothing of/about Tony's accident.

### B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### JUST TO BE ON THE SAFE SIDE...

People are becoming more security conscious these days. Crimes like burglary and theft are definitely on the increase. One of the most painful experiences a home owner can have is to arrive home and find that his or her valuables have disappeared because a window had accidentally been left open. What can we do to protect ourselves?

The most important piece of advice is to make sure that your insurance coverage is up to date. Another sensible thing to do is to go along to your local police station, where they will be more than willing to make suggestions on reliable ways of safeguarding your property.

**THIEF, PAIN  
OWN  
VALUE, ACCIDENT  
  
ADVISE  
INSURE, SENSE  
  
SUGGEST, RELY**



## D Complete using the words given.



<b>wild</b> (adj):	very excited and out of control
<b>mad</b> (adj):	(1) very angry (2) crazy or foolish
<b>furious</b> (adj):	extremely angry
<b>bad-tempered</b> (adj):	not cheerful, getting angry easily
<b>irritable</b> (adj):	getting annoyed easily
<b>nervous</b> (adj):	obviously anxious or worried about sth that is happening or might happen
<b>sensitive</b> (adj):	(1) easily affected or harmed by sth (2) aware of and understanding other people's needs and problems
<b>sensible</b> (adj):	based on reason, not on emotions
<b>timid</b> (adj):	shy, nervous, lacking in courage and self-confidence
<b>shy</b> (adj):	nervous and uncomfortable in the company of other people
<b>embarrassed</b> (adj):	feeling uncomfortable in a situation or guilty about sth
<b>ashamed</b> (adj):	feeling guilty or embarrassed because of sth you have done

1. The students were obviously nervous before the exam.
2. In the heat, babies get irritable and restless.
3. My parents were furious/mad with me when they found out that I had used the car without their permission.
4. The crowd went wild/mad as soon as the band began playing.
5. Some people are bad-tempered by nature.
6. I'll tell you the truth. Just don't get mad/furious.
7. Michelle is a very good social worker. She's very sensitive to other people's problems.
8. The sensible thing to do would be to get a lawyer's advice.
9. You should be ashamed of yourself for acting like a child.
10. The shy/timid girl found it difficult to make friends at the new school.
11. You can imagine how embarrassed I felt when I realised I was wearing two different shoes.
12. I'm too shy/timid/embarrassed to sing in public.



# 18 Reported Speech

In Direct Speech we give the exact words somebody said and use quotation marks. In **Reported Speech** we give the meaning of what someone said, but with some changes and without quotation marks.

**Direct Speech:** *She said, "I'm tired."*  
*"I'm tired," she said.*

**Reported Speech:** *She said (that) she was tired.*

We usually introduce **Reported Speech** with the verbs **tell** (when there is a person/pronoun as an object) and **say** (when there is no person/pronoun as an object). **That** is optional.

*"I'm leaving, Tom," she said.* → *She told Tom (that) she was leaving.*

*"I'm leaving," she said.* → *She said (that) she was leaving.*

## Changing from direct to reported speech

	Direct Speech		Reported Speech	
Tenses	<b>Present Simple</b>	<i>He said, "I want to buy a new car."</i>	<b>Past Simple</b> <i>He said (that) he wanted to buy a new car.</i>	
	<b>Present Progressive</b>	<i>She said, "I'm learning Spanish."</i>	<b>Past Progressive</b> <i>She said (that) she was learning Spanish.</i>	
	<b>Past Simple</b>	<i>"I missed the train," he said.</i>	<b>Past Perfect Simple</b> <i>He said (that) he had missed the train.</i>	
	<b>Present Perfect Simple</b>	<i>"I've missed the train," he said.</i>		
	<b>Past Progressive</b>	<i>She said, "I was staying with a friend."</i>	<b>Past Perfect Progressive</b> <i>She said (that) she had been staying with a friend.</i>	
	<b>Present Perfect Progressive</b>	<i>She said, "I have been staying with a friend."</i>		
Modal verbs	<b>will</b>	<i>She said, "I'll call you."</i>	<b>would</b> <i>She said (that) she would call me.</i>	
	<b>can</b>	<i>He said, "I can run very fast."</i>	<b>could</b> <i>He said (that) he could run very fast.</i>	
	<b>may</b>	<i>They said, "We may go on holiday."</i>	<b>might</b> <i>They said (that) they might go on holiday.</i>	
	<b>must</b>	<i>She said, "I must get up early every day."</i>	<b>had to</b> (obligation)	<i>She said (that) she had to get up early every day.</i>
		<i>He said, "You must be tired."</i>	<b>must</b> (deduction)	<i>He said (that) I must be tired.</i>
	<b>must not</b>	<i>She said, "You mustn't smoke."</i>	<b>must not</b> (prohibition)	<i>She said (that) I/we mustn't smoke.</i>
	<b>need</b>	<i>She said, "I need to go shopping."</i>	<b>needed/had to</b>	<i>She said (that) she needed/had to go shopping.</i>
<b>needn't</b>	<i>He said, "I needn't hurry."</i>	<b>needn't/didn't have to</b> (present)	<i>He said (that) he didn't have to hurry.</i>	
	<i>She said, "You needn't pick me up tomorrow."</i>	<b>wouldn't have to</b> (future)	<i>She told me (that) I wouldn't have to pick her up the following day.</i>	

▶ **would, could, might, should, ought to** do not change in Reported Speech.



	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
<b>Time Expressions</b>	now today/tonight yesterday tomorrow last week (month, etc.) next week (month, etc.) ago	then that day/that night the day before/the previous day the next/following day the previous week (month, etc.)/the week (month, etc.) before the following week (month, etc.) before
<b>Other changes</b>	this/these here pronouns /possessive adjectives	that/those there they change according to the context

**note**

**No changes** are made in the following cases:

- When the reporting verb is in the Present, Future or Present Perfect tense.  
*He says, "I'll be a lawyer when I grow up." → He says (that) he will be a lawyer when he grows up.*
- when the sentence expresses a general truth or something that is unlikely to change.  
*She said, "The days are longer in the summer." → She said (that) the days are longer in the summer.*  
*She said, "I prefer coffee to tea." → She said (that) she prefers coffee to tea.*
- The Past Perfect (Simple and Progressive) does not change in Reported Speech.  
*She said, "I had prepared dinner in advance." → She said (that) she had prepared dinner in advance.*
- The Past Progressive does not usually change; Past tenses **in time clauses** do not change.  
*"I was speaking on the phone when the doorbell rang," she said. → She said (that) she was speaking on the phone when the doorbell rang.*
- When something is reported immediately after it is said.  
*"This dress looks awful," Mary said. → Mary said (that) this dress looks awful.*
- The Past Simple in colloquial speech can either change or remain the same.  
*"I got my school report yesterday," said Jim. → Jim said (that) he got/had got his school report the day before.*
- When something, although said earlier, will take place in the future.  
*John said, "I'm flying to Rome tomorrow." → John said (that) he is flying to Rome tomorrow. (It is still today.)*
- When there is a Conditional (Type 2 or 3) or a sentence with wish/If only.  
*Peter said, "If I were rich, I would travel a lot." → Peter said (that) if he were rich, he would travel a lot.*  
*Karen said, "If I hadn't woken up late, I wouldn't have missed the bus." → Karen said (that) if she hadn't woken up late, she wouldn't have missed the bus.*  
*Susan said, "I wish I knew his name." → Susan said (that) she wished she knew his name.*

### Reported Questions

**Reported Questions** are introduced with the verbs **ask, inquire, wonder, want to know**, etc. The auxiliaries **do, does, did** and question marks are not used. The word order is the same as in statements and the tenses change according to the rules.

Type	Form	Examples
Yes-No questions	ask wonder, etc. <input type="checkbox"/> + if/whether + subject + verb	"Do you speak German?" → <i>She wondered if I spoke German.</i>
Wh-questions	ask wonder, etc. <input type="checkbox"/> + question word + subject + verb	"Where do you live?" → <i>She wanted to know where I lived.</i>



## note

- ▶ **Whether** often indicates uncertainty or doubt. It is used when there is a choice between two alternatives.

*He wondered whether I had posted the letter or not.*

- ▶ **Question Tags** are omitted in Reported Speech.

*"They haven't arrived yet, have they?" he said. → He asked if/whether they had arrived yet.*

### Commands — Requests — Advice

To report commands, requests, advice, warnings or suggestions, we use the verbs **tell, ask, beg, order, command, advise, forbid, warn, encourage, etc. + (object) + full infinitive**

*The flight attendant said, "Please return to your seats and fasten your seat belts." → The flight attendant asked us to return to our seats and fasten our seat belts.*

*"Don't talk so fast," he said. → He advised me not to talk so fast.*

### Other Reporting Verbs

- **refuse/offer/promise (+ object)/threaten (+ object)/claim/agree, etc. + full infinitive**

*"I'll pick you up from the airport," he said. → He offered to pick me up from the airport.*

- **accuse sb of/complain to sb about/insist on/admit (to)/deny/apologise for + -ing form**

*Susan said, "He stole the old woman's handbag." → Susan accused him of stealing the old woman's handbag.*

*"I didn't write anything on the desk," he said. → He denied writing/having written anything on the desk.*

- **complain/explain/agree/claim/deny**  **+ that-clause**  
**promise/threaten/warn + (object)**

*"My coffee is too cold," she said. → She complained that her coffee was too cold.*

## note

*"Let's go for a swim," Peter said. → Peter suggested*  *going for a swim.*  
 *that they should go for a swim.*  
 *that they go/went for a swim.*

## Grammar Practice

**A** A dentist advises her patient on her problem. Rewrite the dialogue in Reported Speech.

**Mrs Kent:** My gums are very sore. Yesterday, as I was brushing my teeth, I noticed that my gums were bleeding! Is there anything wrong with them? How can I stop the bleeding? What should I do?

**Dentist:** Firstly, don't panic. If you take my advice, you won't have any problems. Buy a soft toothbrush and brush your teeth twice a day to keep your gums healthy. I'll make an appointment for you next week, so that I can remove the plaque that has built up and is causing you problems.

Mrs Kent said that her gums were very sore. She explained that the day before/the previous day, as she was brushing her teeth, she noticed that her gums were bleeding. She asked the dentist if there was anything wrong with them and how she could stop the bleeding.

She wanted to know what she should do.

The dentist told her not to panic. He said that if she took his advice, she wouldn't have any problems. He advised her to buy a soft toothbrush and to brush her teeth twice a day to keep her gums healthy. He said that he would make an appointment for her the following week, so that he could remove the plaque that had built up and was causing her problems.



## B Change the following sentences into Reported Speech. Use one of the reporting verbs given below.

advise  
promise

suggest  
inquire

warn  
agree

threaten  
apologise

complain  
refuse

1. "Why don't we invite Jane to dinner tonight?" Mrs Stone said.  
Mrs Stone suggested inviting/that they invite(d)/that they should invite Jane to dinner that night.

---

2. "Where is Mount Everest?" asked a student.  
A student inquired where Mount Everest was.

---

3. "If you scream, I'll shoot," said the robber to the girl.  
The robber threatened the girl that he would shoot her if she screamed. **or** The robber threatened to shoot the girl if she screamed.

---

4. "I have been standing in this queue for two hours!" said the man.  
The man complained about standing/that he had been standing in that queue for two hours.

---

5. "You should stay in the shade and wear a hat, Mrs Bent," said the doctor.  
The doctor advised Mrs Bent to stay in the shade and wear a hat.

---

6. "You'll burn yourself, Tom, if you keep playing with matches," said his father.  
Tom's father warned Tom that he would burn himself if he kept playing with matches.

---

7. "I'm really sorry that I woke you up this morning, Harry," said Chris.  
Chris apologised to Harry for waking him up that morning.

---

8. "I think you're right, Tracey. We ought to let the others know," said Kerry.  
Kerry agreed with Tracey to let/that they ought to let the others know.

---

9. "I'll definitely pay you back by the end of the week, Mum," said Sue.  
Sue promised her mum that she would definitely pay her back by the end of the week. **or** Sue promised to pay back her mum by the end of the week.

---

10. "I will not let you borrow my car tomorrow, Graham," said Michael.  
Michael refused to let Graham borrow his car the next/the following day.

## C Rewrite using Direct Speech.

Sandra told Marie that she had been trying to call the university for the last hour but the line had been engaged.

Marie inquired what Sandra wanted to ask them.

Sandra answered that they had sent out her results the week before but that she hadn't received them yet.

Marie asked Sandra whether she knew that the post office had been on strike for the past week.

She replied that she hadn't known. She explained that if only she had known, then she wouldn't have wasted so much time on the phone.

**Sandra:** I've been trying to call the university for the last hour but the line has been engaged.

**Marie:** What do you want to ask them?

**Sandra:** They sent out my results last week but I haven't received them yet.

**Marie:** Did you know that the post office has been on strike for the past week?

**Sandra:** No, I didn't know. If only I had known, then I wouldn't have wasted so much time on the phone.



**D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

- “I must have this document translated into French,” said Robert.  
**had** Robert said that he had to have that document translated into French.
- “You really must let me pay for the meal,” said Jane.  
**insisted** Jane insisted on paying for the meal.
- “Leave me alone,” Tony said to us.  
**told** Tony told us to leave him alone.
- “I rang you last night, Julie,” said Brian.  
**rung** Brian explained to Julie that he had rung her the previous night.
- “You needn’t move to England next year,” they told me.  
**would** I was told that I would not have to move to England the following year.
- “How much does it cost to go to Rome by plane?” he asked himself.  
**wondered** He wondered how much it cost to go to Rome by plane.
- “Are you working today, Peter?” she asked.  
**whether** She wanted to know whether Peter was working that day.
- “Don’t bring your dog into the shop,” the shop owner said to Mary.  
**forbade** The shop owner forbade Mary to bring her dog into the shop.

## Vocabulary Practice

**A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.**

**throw away:** get rid of sth you don’t want  
**throw out:** (1) force sb out of a place or group (2) get rid of sth you don’t want  
**tidy up:** make a place neat  
**try on:** put on clothes to see if they fit you or if they look nice  
**try out:** test sth in order to see how effective or useful it is

- Tidy up this room! It’s a complete mess!
- Could we try out the bike before we buy it?
- He ate the last biscuit and threw away/out the packet.
- Would you like to try on this dress? The dressing room is over there.
- He was thrown out of the pub for starting a fight.

**B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.**

**on time:** not late, at the expected or scheduled time  
**on the way:** in the course of a journey  
**out of breath:** breathing very quickly and with difficulty because you’ve been doing sth energetic  
**out of control:** uncontrolled, unrestrained  
**out of danger:** safe, no longer likely to be harmed  
**out of fashion:** old-fashioned, no longer popular  
**out of luck:** unlucky  
**out of order:** broken, not working, not functioning properly  
**out of reach:** impossible to have, get or accomplish  
**out of sight:** sth that you cannot see  
**out of work:** unemployed

- Medicine should be kept out of reach of children.
- It seems we’re out of luck. The last tickets were sold to the couple in front of us.
- The fire was out of control because of the high winds.
- Don’t worry, she usually arrives at meetings on time.
- It’s depressing being out of work. There’s nothing to do and no money to spend.
- We’ll stop on the way to their house and buy a bottle of wine.
- Why are you out of breath? Have you been running?
- I watched the train leave until it was out of sight.
- I couldn’t call you because my telephone was out of order.
- Nowadays people can wear whatever they like. Hardly anything is out of fashion.
- Fortunately, it was announced that all the injured people from the accident were out of danger.



### C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### CLIMBING UP THE STARS!

The highest mountain in the world is Mount Everest, 8 848m high. Many adventurous climbers have risked their lives climbing it. More than 140 people have died, some in their attempt to reach the peak, and others who were unfortunate in their return trip from the top. Being confident is not enough for this trip. You should be fit, skilled and you must take the proper supplies with you. This could mean the difference between life and death. Nevertheless, such an operation is full of danger. Rarely does a climber return from Mount Everest without needing medical attention. Some come down, with fingers or toes so frozen that they clink like glass. But what is it that makes people risk their lives or take the punishment Mt Everest imposes on them? Why is it that even the death of fellow climbers doesn't discourage them? Understanding climbers' reasons may be difficult. Perhaps it's the thrill of standing on the peak of the highest mountain, the place on earth that's the closest to the stars.

ADVENTURE

FORTUNE

CONFIDE

SUPPLY

OPERATE

MEDICINE

FREEZE

PUNISH

COURAGE

UNDERSTAND

### D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

<b>bake</b> (v):	cook in an oven (e.g. cake)
<b>boil</b> (v):	cook in boiling water
<b>grill</b> (v):	cook using strong heat directly above or below the food
<b>roast</b> (v):	cook food by dry heat in an oven or over a fire
<b>fry</b> (v):	cook food in a pan with very hot oil or fat

<b>spread</b> (v):	apply on a surface as a coating
<b>spill</b> (v):	accidentally cause sth (usually liquid) to flow on a surface
<b>drop</b> (v):	cause sth to fall on the ground
<b>flood</b> (v):	make or become covered with water

<b>debate</b> (n):	(formal) discussion about a subject on which people have different and often opposing opinions
--------------------	--

<b>discussion</b> (n):	when people talk about an issue in order to reach a decision
------------------------	--

<b>dialogue</b> (n):	(1) communication or discussion between people or groups of people (2) conversation between two people in a book, film or play
----------------------	---

<b>interview</b> (n):	(1) formal meeting at which sb is asked questions in order to find out if they are suitable for a job or course of study (2) conversation between a journalist and a famous person
-----------------------	---

- Add the pasta when the water has boiled.
- I always fry my eggs with lots of oil.
- Bake the cake for 50 minutes.
- Let's grill the chops on the barbecue.
- Roast the chicken with potatoes in the oven.
- Tom dropped the vase and it broke.
- I always spread butter on my bread.
- The children forgot to turn the tap off and the whole kitchen flooded.
- Oh no! You've spilt/spilled the milk on the table.
- My interview with the personnel manager went well. I might get the job after all.
- The dialogue in the comedy was very unnatural.
- The presidential candidates are going to have a live debate on television.
- The members of the school council are going to have a discussion tomorrow about how to solve the problem.



# unit | 19 | Question Forms

## A. Yes/No Questions

These questions may be answered simply with a **Yes** or **No**.

Formation	Examples
auxiliary verb modal verb be/have	He lives in Manchester. → Does he live in Manchester? I can swim well. → Can you swim well? He is an accountant. → Is he an accountant?
} + subject + main verb	
}	

### note

- ▶ **Yes/No** questions can receive short answers, that is **Yes/No** + subject + auxiliary (positive or negative). *Is he looking for a new job? Yes, he is.*
- ▶ Other ways of answering **Yes / No** questions in short:

I expect so / I don't expect so / I expect not	I think so / I don't think so
I suppose so / I don't suppose so / I suppose not	I hope so / I hope not
I imagine so / I don't imagine so / I imagine not	I guess so / I guess not
	I'm afraid so / I'm afraid not

absolutely (not), certainly (not), definitely (not), of course (not)

*Can the children play in the garden? Certainly. / I guess so. / I'm afraid they can't. / I'm afraid not.*

## B. Wh-Questions

Questions beginning with the words: **who**, **which**, **whose**, **what**, **why**, **when**, **where** and **how** ask for specific information.

Formation	Examples
question word + auxiliary verb/ modal verb + subject + verb	What are you looking for? When must you leave? Where are they?
question word + be/have + subject	
}	

### note

- Prepositions are usually placed at the end of a question. e.g. *What did he talk about?*
- In formal English, prepositions can appear before the question word. e.g. *About what did he talk?*

Question Word	We ask about:	Examples
Who	people (subject or object)	<i>Who is your best friend? Who are you talking to?</i>
Whom	people (object), in formal English or after prepositions	<i>Who(m) did you meet yesterday? To whom has she been talking?</i>
Which	people or things (limited choice)	<i>Which students will participate in the survey? Which of these sweaters do you like best?</i>
Whose	possession	<i>Whose are these boots? Whose boots are these?</i>
What	things (unlimited choice), actions and activities	<i>What did you buy? What happened?</i>
What...like?	general descriptions	<i>What is your brother like?</i>
What type/sort kind of...?	specific information	<i>What sort of cars do you like driving?</i>
What time/size, etc...?		<i>What height are we flying at?</i>
What...for?		<i>What do you need this for?</i>
Why	reason, purpose	<i>Why did he sell his car?</i>
When	time	<i>When are they coming?</i>

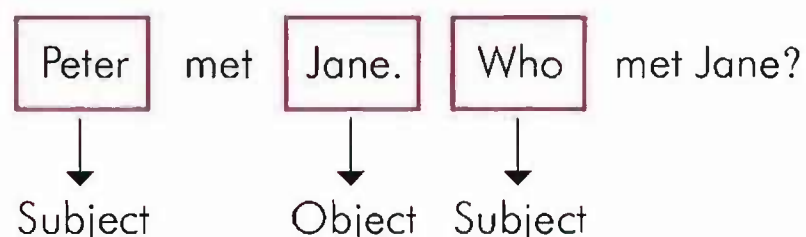


Where	place	<i>Where is your office?</i>
How	manner / the way something is done	<i>How did they behave?</i>
How + adjective/adverb	specific information	<i>How did you fix this?</i>
How much/many	quantity	<i>How deep is this river?</i>
How + be	someone's health	<i>How long does it take to fly to London?</i> <i>How much coffee is left?</i> <i>How is your brother?</i>

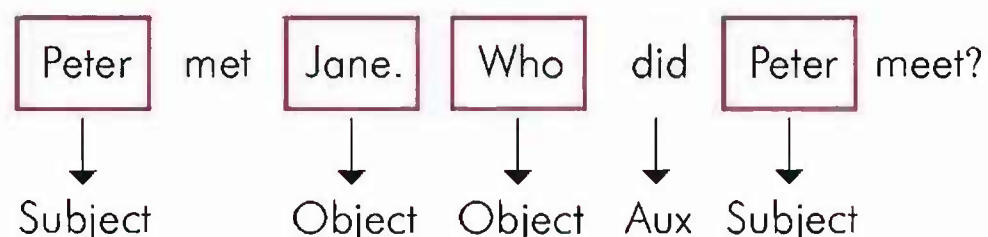
**note**

**Who, what** and **which** may ask about the subject or the object of a sentence.

- Questions about the subject do not take an auxiliary verb.



- Questions about the object take an auxiliary verb.



### C. Negative Questions

Negative questions are formed with a negative auxiliary in the short form, e.g. *Aren't you Bill's brother?*

#### Negative questions are used:

- to express emotions (surprise, anger, annoyance, disappointment, shock, etc.).
- when a positive answer is expected.
- to make sure that some information is correct.
- in exclamations.

#### Examples

*Hasn't he finished his report yet?*  
*Can't you drive? I thought you could.*  
*It's past midnight. Shouldn't you be in bed? (Obviously yes)*  
*Doesn't she live in Paris?*  
*Wasn't it a wonderful play?*

**note**

- ▶ If there are two auxiliary verbs, the first one is in the negative form.

*Haven't you been watching the news?*

- ▶ We may use the full form of **not** in negative questions for emphasis or in formal speech.

*Has he not signed the contract yet?*

### D. Question Tags

Question tags are short questions placed at the end of a statement.

#### Formation

Auxiliary/Modal Verb + Subject Pronoun

- If the statement is positive, the question tag is negative.
- If the statement is negative, the question tag is positive.

#### Examples

*You can drive a car, can't you?*  
*He is coming to the party, isn't he?*  
*You didn't forget to buy bread, did you?*  
*She hardly noticed anything, did she?*

**note**

Question tags are asked:

- with rising intonation (↗), when we are not sure about some information and are asking for confirmation.

*You have a driving licence, don't you (↗)? Yes, I do.*

- with falling intonation (↘), when we are sure about the information and expect the listener to agree.

*It's quite cold today, isn't it (↘)? Yes, it is.*

**I am** your best friend, **aren't I**?

**Let's** go dancing tonight, **shall we**?

**Let** me give you a hand, **will/won't you**?

**Leave** the window open, **will/can/would/could you**?

**Don't forget** to buy some groceries, **will you**?

**This/That** is an amazing story, **isn't it**?

**Nothing** is wrong, **is it**?

**There's no** reason for him to come over, **is there**?

**They've got** two children, **haven't they**?

**She has** breakfast every morning, **doesn't she**?

**Everyone** agreed with his proposal, **didn't they**?

**Somebody** must take care of the situation, **mustn't they**?

**No one** would ever trust him, **would they**?



## E. Indirect Questions

Indirect questions begin with phrases such as **Can/Could you tell me...? Do you know...? Can you remember...? Can/Could you explain...? Have you any idea...?** etc. They are used mostly when we ask for information.

### Formation

- **introductory phrase + question word + subject + verb**  
when the direct question begins with a question word
- **introductory phrase + if/whether + subject + verb**  
when the direct question does not include a question word

### Examples

*Where is the National Gallery?* →  
*Could you tell me where the National Gallery is?*

*Was the flight delayed?* →  
*Do you know if the flight was delayed?*

### note

The auxiliaries **do, does** and **did** are never used in indirect questions.  
*Does he play golf regularly?* → *Do you know if he plays golf regularly?*

## Grammar Practice

### A Write questions. The answers are the words in bold type.

1. Which jumper suits me better, the red or the blue one?

The **red** jumper suits you better than the blue one.

2. Did the basketball player sign the contract?

I'm afraid **not**. The basketball player didn't sign the contract.

3. What does the price include?

The price includes **two meals at the hotel restaurant**, so it's convenient.

4. How did she feel when she fell?

She felt **embarrassed** when she fell, as most of her guests were around.

5. Does the library open at 9:00 a.m. every weekday?

**Yes**, the library opens at 9:00 a.m. every weekday.

6. Where will Professor Burns give his lecture?

Professor Burns will give his lecture **at the Palace Hotel**.

7. Why are you buying a computer?

I'm buying a computer **because I need it for my job**.

8. Who persuaded Jane to give up smoking?

**Paula** persuaded Jane to give up smoking. Isn't it great?

9. What is your new house like?

My new house **is big and has a garden at the front**.

10. Can I go to the beach with my friends?

I **suppose** you can go to the beach with your friends.

### B Use the words in brackets to make negative questions.

1. "Last year the children organised a bazaar to raise money for the hospital.

Wasn't it a great idea ? (it/be/a great idea)" "Yes, I think they should do it again."

2. "I bought a new jacket today but the sleeve is torn!"

"Shouldn't you take it back ? (you/should/take/it/back)" "Yes, I will. I'll ask for another one."

3. "Isn't the Town Hall just around the corner ? (the Town Hall/be/just around the corner)" "Yes, that's right."

4. "You've ruined my jumper by spilling coffee on it and last week you spilt bleach on my jeans.

Can't you do anything right ? (you/can/do/anything right)"

5. "You haven't bought any bread. "Didn't you go to the baker's ? (you/go/to the baker's)"

"No, I went to the supermarket but completely forgot to get some bread."



### C Complete using question tags.

**Tanya:** ... and the animal rights group I'm in is holding a demonstration outside one of the research laboratories.

**Brett:** Do you think that's really necessary? I mean, there's a need for these experiments, isn't there?  
Let's consider the advantages of these experiments, shall we? Scientists must test new medical treatment somehow, mustn't they? With these tests they can see how effective and safe the treatments are. Everyone wants new vaccines and safer drugs, don't they?

**Tanya:** I see your point, but scientists don't really care about the animals, do they? Are you aware that thousands of animals die every year as a result of these experiments? Scientists should find another way of testing their discoveries, shouldn't they?

### D Make Indirect Questions using the phrases, *Can/Could you tell me...?, Can/Could you explain...?, Do you know...?, Have you any idea...?, Can you remember...?*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. How do you operate this video?                 | <u>...how you operate this video?</u>                       |
| 2. Who directed this film?                        | <u>...who directed this film?</u>                           |
| 3. Has the Moore family moved to their new house? | <u>...if the Moore family has moved to their new house?</u> |
| 4. When is their wedding anniversary?             | <u>...when their wedding anniversary is?</u>                |
| 5. Did we invite John to our party?               | <u>...if we invited John to our party?</u>                  |
| 6. Was the trip postponed?                        | <u>...if the trip was postponed?</u>                        |
| 7. Whose is the luggage in the living room?       | <u>...whose the luggage in the living room is?</u>          |
| 8. Where should I get my eyes tested?             | <u>...where I should get my eyes tested?</u>                |
| 9. What time did you set your alarm clock for?    | <u>...what time you set your alarm clock for?</u>           |
| 10. Are you working this weekend?                 | <u>...if you are working this weekend?</u>                  |

### E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. What was the price of the ticket?                      | <b>pay</b> How <u>much did you pay for</u> the ticket?  |
| 2. Whose car is this?                                     | <b>belong</b> Who <u>does this car belong</u> to?   |
| 3. The film was interesting, wasn't it?                   | <b>boring</b> The film <u>wasn't boring, was</u> it?  |
| 4. How did the fire start, sir?                           | <b>explain</b> Could you <u>explain how the fire started</u> , sir?                                   |
| 5. Mr Wesley, what caused you to resign so suddenly?      | <b>why</b> Mr Wesley, <u>why did you resign</u> so suddenly?  |
| 6. Can you tell me Tom's address, Kelly?                  | <b>lives</b> Can you tell me <u>where Tom lives</u> , Kelly?  |
| 7. What's the distance from the village to the beach?     | <b>it</b> How <u>far is it</u> from the village to the beach?   |
| 8. Should I inform our clients about the change of plans? | <b>whether</b> I'd like to know <u>whether I should inform</u> our clients about the change of plans. |



## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

<b>ring up:</b>	telephone
<b>run along:</b>	go away
<b>run away:</b>	leave from a place that makes you unhappy, escape
<b>run into:</b>	meet sb unexpectedly
<b>run out (of):</b>	have no more of sth left
<b>run over:</b>	knock down a person or animal with a vehicle

1. Michael ran away from his boarding school because he thought it was too strict.
2. I can't start the car because I've run out of petrol.
3. Peter, run along now and play with the other children.
4. I rang up the restaurant and made a reservation.
5. You'll never believe who I ran into the other day.
6. I accidentally ran over a cat as I was parking my car.

### B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

<b>off duty:</b>	not working
<b>off school/work:</b>	away from school or not working because you are ill
<b>on behalf of:</b>	as a representative of sb
<b>on business:</b>	in another place, working
<b>on the contrary:</b>	(1) not at all (2) quite the reverse
<b>on a diet:</b>	not eating very much because you are trying to lose weight
<b>on duty:</b>	working
<b>on an excursion/ a journey/ a tour/a trip, etc.:</b>	away for these reasons
<b>on fire:</b>	burning
<b>on foot:</b>	walking

1. If you are on a diet, you should avoid eating fatty foods and sugar.
2. Sue doesn't take the bus to school. She goes on foot.
3. We are planning to go on a trip/on an excursion to Bath next weekend. Would you like to join us?
4. Police officers don't carry their guns when they are off duty.
5. I'm going to give a talk on behalf of Greenpeace.
6. Extra staff were called on duty at the hospital after the terrible earthquake.
7. I don't believe you; on the contrary, I believe Bill.
8. Kim is in Brazil on business this week. Her job requires her to meet overseas clients.
9. You aren't feeling well and you've got a temperature! Take a few days off work. I'm sure your boss will understand.
10. Call the fire brigade. The neighbour's house is on fire.

### C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### SOME GUYS HAVE ALL THE LUCK!

It is thought that some people are just born lucky. They seem to have everything, from the perfect family to the best employment at the most successful company in town. Their good fortune causes jealousy in less fortunate people, who do all sorts of things to bring luck into their lives.

Some people carry good luck charms, such as blue stones and horseshoes on a daily basis, to make sure that they will stay healthy, safe and free from injury/ies. Also, some otherwise logical people go through superstitious actions like touching wood in order to bring themselves good luck.

But is there really any relation/relationship between all these things and success in life? Many people consider good luck charms foolish and unreasonable. They believe that success in life comes through working hard.

LUCK

EMPLOY

JEALOUS

DAY

HEALTH, INJURE

LOGIC

RELATE

FOOL, REASON



**D Complete using the correct form of the words given.**

**bundle** (n): a number of things wrapped or tied together in order to be carried

**heap** (n): pile of things arranged in an untidy way

**pile** (n): a quantity of things arranged neatly one on top of the other

**bunch** (n): a number of similar things fastened, growing or grouped together (grapes, keys, etc.)

**pack** (n): a collection of things packed together (in a bag or packet)  
(v) put your belongings into a bag because you're leaving a place or going on holiday

**packet** (n): small container made of thin cardboard, paper or plastic, in which items of the same kind are sold (biscuits, cigarettes, etc.)

**package** (n): small parcel

**parcel** (n): sth wrapped up in paper, usually to be given or sent to sb by post

**wrap** (v): fold paper or cloth around sth in order to cover it completely

**fasten** (v): do sth up by means of buttons, straps, buckles or other devices

**tie** (v): fasten with a string or rope, making a knot

**fold** (v): bend sth so that one part covers another

1. His room is very untidy; his clothes are all thrown in a heap in a corner.
2. I bought my mother a bunch of flowers on Mother's Day.
3. Kerry keeps her old magazines tied up in bundles/piles in the attic.
4. I want you to arrange these folders in alphabetical order and put them in a neat pile on my desk.
5. Could you get me a packet of crisps?
6. I'd like to send this parcel/package to Africa. How much will it cost?
7. Simon is busy packing his clothes for the trip.
8. Little John is learning to tie his shoelaces.
9. Please fasten your seat belts.
10. Could you wrap this for me? It's a gift.
11. Would you fold these sheets for me and put them in the bottom drawer?





## A. Relative Clauses

Relative clauses are introduced by **relative pronouns** (who, whose, whom, which, that) or **relative adverbs** (when, where, why).

Relative Pronouns	For people	For animals/things
who, that, which (subject of the verb- cannot be omitted)	<b>who/that</b> <i>I saw a boy. He could ride his bike without using his hands. →</i> <i>I saw a boy who could ride his bike without using his hands.</i>	<b>which/that</b> <i>He has written a book. It is about the history of education. → He has written a book which is about the history of education.</i>
who, whom, that, which (object of the verb- can be omitted)	<b>who/whom/that</b> <i>He liked the girl. He met her at the party yesterday. → He liked the girl (who/ whom/that) he met at the party yesterday.</i> <b>Whom</b> is used in formal speech or after prepositions.	<b>which/that</b> <i>That hat looks old-fashioned. She bought it recently. → The hat (which/that) she bought recently looks old-fashioned.</i>
whose, of which (possession-cannot be omitted)	<b>whose</b> <i>I know the writer. His latest novel was a great success. → I know the writer whose latest novel was a great success.</i>	<b>whose/of which</b> <i>I have a car. Its engine is noisy. → I have a car whose engine/the engine of which is noisy.</i>

## note

- ▶ Prepositions normally go **after** relative pronouns. In formal speech, prepositions can go before **whom** and **which** only (not before who/that/whose).  
*The bed (that/which) I slept in last night was very soft. (usual)*  
*The bed in which I slept last night was very soft. (formal)*
- ▶ **Expressions of quantity** (some of, many of, a few of, most of, half of, neither of, none of, a number of, etc.) can be followed by whom/which/whose.  
*Our company has 80 employees, most of whom are computer literate.*
- ▶ **Which** sometimes refers to a whole sentence and cannot be omitted.  
*The lift was out of order and this was very inconvenient. →*  
*The lift was out of order, which was very inconvenient.*

Relative adverbs	Use	Examples
when (can sometimes be omitted)	Time	<i>I'll never forget the day (when) I first met him.</i>
where	Place	<i>The village where I grew up is very small.</i>
why (can sometimes be omitted)	Reason	<i>The reason (why) he left was that he felt disappointed.</i>

## note

- ▶ **That** can be used instead of **when**.  
*I'll never forget the summer when / that we went to Nice.*
- ▶ **In/on/at which** can be used instead of **when** and **where**. **Where** can be omitted or substituted by **that** if the verb is followed by a preposition.  
*We stayed at a rather cheap hotel. →*  
*The hotel where / at which we stayed was rather cheap. or*  
*The hotel (that) we stayed at was rather cheap.*



## note

**Defining and non-defining relative clauses**

- **Defining relative clauses** provide information which is essential to the meaning of the sentence. No commas are used.  
*Students who cheat should be punished.*
- **Non-defining relative clauses** provide additional information (not essential to the meaning of the sentence). They are put between commas. The relative pronouns cannot be omitted; neither can we use **that** instead of them.  
*Dr Miller, who is the Head of the Department, will attend the reception.*

**B. Clauses of Time**

Clauses of time are introduced by: **when, as, while, as soon as, before, after, until, till, by the time, just as, since, the moment (that), whenever, every time**, etc. They can go before the main clause (separated by a comma) or after the main clause (no comma is required).

*As soon as the fire alarm went off, everyone left the building.*

*Everyone left the building as soon as the fire alarm went off.*

**Sequence of tenses**

Main clause	Time clause	Examples
present / future	present	<i>I'll wait until the rain stops.</i>
past	past	<i>I waited until the rain stopped.</i>

**Time conjunctions**

Conjunctions	Use	Examples
when as while	• for two events happening at the same time	<i>He dropped his shopping bag as he was running to catch the bus.</i>
just (as)	• for two short actions happening at the same time	<i>Just as we got to the beach, it started to rain.</i>
when as soon as before after	• for events taking place one after the other	<i>They may go out after they finish/have finished their homework. He left before I could explain anything.</i>
by the time	• meaning "not later than"	<i>I will have finished my work by the time you arrive (=no later than the time you arrive).</i>
until, till	• meaning "up to a certain time"	<i>I won't leave until I have finished everything.</i>

**Grammar Practice****A Complete using who, whose, which, that, where, why or -.**

Sherlock Holmes, whose name is well-known, didn't really exist. However, for many who/that have read his adventures, he might as well have been a real person.

The man who/that created Holmes was Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, born in Edinburgh in 1859. He trained as a doctor, but found he could earn more money by writing than by practising medicine. He wrote not only stories about Holmes, but many other books which/that/— people also liked. However, it is for the detective stories which/that/— he wrote that he is best remembered.

The place where the Holmes mysteries are set is Victorian England. Holmes, who is a brilliant



detective, uses his intelligence and scientific knowledge to solve the mysteries.

Even though Doyle wrote many Holmes mysteries, we'll never know the reason why/— he gave us so little information about Holmes' private life. All the books were written in the first person, not by Holmes, but by his assistant, Dr Watson, whose knowledge of his master's private life was limited.

### B Join the sentences using relative pronouns or adverbs. Omit them where possible.

1. The journalist will interview the old man. His house was broken into last night.

The journalist will interview the old man whose house was broken into last night.

2. I remembered the man. I had seen him at the concert.

I remembered the man who/whom/that/- I had seen at the concert.

3. We visited the town. We were born there.

We visited the town where/in which we were born. or We visited the town that/- we were born in.

4. Bill and Jane haven't been talking to each other for days. There must be a reason.

There must be a reason why Bill and Jane haven't been talking to each other for days.

5. People believe that the old building should be pulled down. The old building is on Park Street.

People believe that the old building which/that is on Park Street should be pulled down.

6. She got up late and missed the boat. That was quite foolish of her.

She got up late and missed the boat, which was quite foolish of her.

7. I invited Mrs Kansas to my party. She lives next door.

I invited Mrs Kansas, who lives next door, to my party.

8. We must arrange a time. Then we can discuss the problem.

We must arrange a time when we can discuss the problem.

### C Choose the correct answers.

\_\_\_\_\_ (1) we hear Walt Disney's name, we immediately think of the huge company which produces the world's most popular cartoon characters. This is Disney's story.

1. a. While                      **b.** Whenever                      c. Just

Walt Disney was born in 1901. \_\_\_\_\_ (2) he was growing up on a farm in Missouri, he became interested in sketching. He drew sketches of the animals living on the farm.

2. **a.** As                              b. As soon as                      c. Once

He attended an art school \_\_\_\_\_ (3) he was fourteen for a short period of time. \_\_\_\_\_ (4) the war ended, he worked at a commercial art studio in Kansas City, where he met Ub Iwerks in 1919. They worked together \_\_\_\_\_ (5) Iwerks died. Together they began making advertisements, but it wasn't long \_\_\_\_\_ (6) they began creating and selling their own cartoons. The success of these cartoons was what made Disney decide to start his own cartoon production company in 1923.

3. a. as                              **b.** when                              c. just  
4. a. By the time                      b. Every time                      **c.** After

It was in 1928 that his most famous character was created—Mickey Mouse. \_\_\_\_\_ (7) the character appeared, it became very popular.

5. a. since                              b. when                              **c.** until  
6. **a.** before                              b. after                              c. once

7. a. The sooner                      b. Before                              **c.** The moment



\_\_\_\_\_ (8) Disney created other popular characters such as Minnie Mouse, Donald Duck, Goofy and Pluto, sound and colour had been added to animation.

8. a. Until                    **b. By the time**                    c. Since

\_\_\_\_\_ (9) this had happened, the cartoons became truly magical.

9. **a. Once**                    b. Whenever                    c. Till

By the mid 30s, Disney was very successful and his organisation had grown into a “factory” of men and women. \_\_\_\_\_ (10) he continued making

10. **a. While**                    b. The moment                    c. When

cartoons, he also began making feature length cartoon movies, such as Snow White and The Seven Dwarfs, which proved to be successful \_\_\_\_\_ (11) it was released.

11. a. by the time                    **b. as soon as**                    c. until

Disneyland in California opened in 1955, Disneyworld in Florida in 1971 and Eurodisney in Paris in 1991.

\_\_\_\_\_ (12) a child enters these amusement parks, they enter an enchanted world where anything and everything is possible. \_\_\_\_\_ (13) there are children and adults young at heart, these parks will remain open. Disney died in 1966. Since then, the company has continued to produce animated films which still keep the Disney name the most popular in children’s entertainment.

12. a. While                    b. As long as                    **c. Every time**

13. **a. As long as**                    b. Until                    c. As soon as

**D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

1. I hadn’t heard from Robert for years and yesterday I received a letter from him.

**who**                    Yesterday I received a letter from Robert who I hadn’t heard from for years.

2. Chris, everyone will be asleep when you come.

**time**                    Chris, by the time you come, everyone will be asleep.

3. In 1986 they gave their first concert in Europe.

**was**                    1986 was the year when/in which/— they gave their first concert in Europe.

4. I spoke to a very helpful assistant manager last week.

**whom**                    The assistant manager to whom I spoke / whom I spoke to last week was very helpful.

5. We’ve interviewed all of the candidates but we haven’t found anyone suitable for the job.

**none**                    We’ve interviewed all of the candidates, none of whom are/were suitable for the job.

6. During a walk in the forest Kelly was stung by a bee.

**while**                    Kelly was stung by a bee while walking/she was walking in the forest.

7. The shop where I used to work has closed down.

**which**                    The shop at which I used to work has closed down.

8. I went to two pay phones, but they were both out of order.

**which**                    I went to two pay phones, neither of which worked.



## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

**save up:** economise by spending less than you earn, usually for a purpose

**sell out:** sell all the stocks of sth, so that there is no more left for people to buy (goods, tickets, etc.)

**set off:** begin a journey

**set out:** (1) start a journey

(2) start doing sth

**set up:** (1) establish sth (home, business, organisation, etc.)

(2) make the necessary preparations for sth to start

1. I set out to do some gardening, but it started raining.
2. John had been saving up his pocket money for months to buy a bike.
3. Tickets for the concert were sold out in just one day!
4. We set off/out on our trip very early in the morning.
5. My parents helped me set up my own business.

### B Complete using prepositions.



1. This closet is full of children's toys.
2. The children were covered with/in mud from head to toe.
3. The students were divided into two teams.
4. Does this bag belong to anyone here?
5. These beautifully-designed ornaments are made of silver.
6. The concert hall was crowded with screaming fans.
7. This game is very different to/from any other game I've played.
8. The taste of broccoli is similar to that of cauliflower.
9. According to the street directory, we'll find Queen St. straight ahead.
10. There's hardly any difference in taste between these two wines.
11. Keep these magazines separate from the newspapers.
12. Your drink consists of different types of fruit juices.



### C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### NOT WRITTEN ON THE STARS

Lots of people read their horoscope for an insight into their character and for the predictions which are made. Graphologists claim that they too are able to understand a person's character-by examining their handwriting!

How big the letters, how straight the lines, the presence of loops and even your signature, can reveal something about your personality. For example, if your handwriting slants to the right, you have a cheerful nature. Writing with upward arches indicates that you are creative. A high t-bar means that the writer is imaginative and ambitious. But there is much more.

Apparently, there are about two-hundred and fifty signs which graphologists take into consideration when analysing a person's writing.

How accurate or how believable this is, is up to the individual to decide.

**PREDICT**

**SIGN, PERSON**

**CHEER**

**CREATE**

**IMAGINE, AMBITION**

**APPARENT**

**CONSIDER**

**BELIEVE**

### D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

<b>regard</b> (v):	believe that sb or sth has a particular quality
<b>think</b> (v):	have an opinion or impression about sth
<b>consider</b> (v):	(1) think carefully about sth (2) have an opinion about sb or sth
<b>suppose</b> (v):	imagine that sth is probably true
<b>imagine</b> (v):	form an idea or picture of sth in your mind

<b>learn</b> (v):	obtain knowledge or a skill through studying or training
<b>find out</b> (v):	learn sth you didn't know, especially through deliberate effort
<b>discover</b> (v):	(1) become aware of sth you didn't know before (2) find sb or sth by chance or because you have been looking for them
<b>invent</b> (v):	create or make up sth for the first time
<b>explore</b> (v):	investigate sth (a place or scientific field) systematically in order to find out more facts about it
<b>inspect</b> (v):	examine sth carefully in order to check that it is all right

- Do you think/suppose I ought to talk to my boss about a raise?
- I want you to imagine this; miles of golden sand and a beautiful blue sea. Doesn't it sound great?
- Did you consider Mr Field's offer carefully?
- We regard you as one of our best employees.
- I saw Tom and Jill out together, so I suppose/think they are dating.
- Marconi invented the radio.
- Captain Cook discovered Australia in 1770.
- The Apollo programme was set up to explore outer space.
- The insurance company have to inspect my car before paying me for the damage caused by the accident.
- Craig has decided to attend classes in order to learn French.
- Did you find out whether you're working on Christmas Eve or not?



### A. Clauses of Concession

Clauses of concession express contrast, opposition or unexpected results and are introduced by **although, even though, though, in spite of, despite, however, but, while, whereas, no matter how**, etc.

Structures	Examples
although even though though ▶ <b>Even though</b> is stronger than <b>although</b> . ▶ <b>Though</b> is more informal and can go at the end of a sentence, meaning “however”.	<i>Although he has plenty of money, he doesn't spend much.</i> <i>Even though there was a lot of snow, no trains were delayed.</i>  <i>She has a driving licence. She rarely drives, though.</i>
in spite of despite in spite of despite	<i>In spite of feeling ill, she came to work.</i> <i>Despite her beautiful voice, she never became a singer.</i>  <i>He didn't show up despite the fact that we had an appointment.</i>
however no matter how ▶ <b>However</b> can also introduce a main clause.	<i>However hard she tries, she never manages to finish her work on time.</i> <i>Vicky eats a lot. However, she isn't overweight.</i>
whatever no matter what	<i>Nobody believes him any more, no matter what he says.</i>
adjective adverb ▶ A very emphatic and formal structure.	<i>Tired as/though she was, she offered to help us.</i>
but while/whereas ▶ <b>Whereas</b> is more formal than <b>while</b> .	<i>I like travelling by plane, while/whereas my husband doesn't.</i>

### B. Clauses of Reason

Reason is expressed with the following structures:

Structures	Use	Examples
because + clause because of + noun/-ing form	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>to answer a question with “why”</li> </ul>	<i>She couldn't get to work on time because the traffic was heavy / because of the heavy traffic.</i>
as since	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>usually at the beginning of a sentence</li> </ul>	<i>As the weather was fine, we decided to go for a swim.</i>
due to + noun/-ing form due to the fact + that-clause	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>formal structure meaning “because (of)”</li> </ul>	<i>Due to a heavy snowstorm, all flights to Oslo were cancelled yesterday.</i>

#### note

If a clause of reason or concession comes before the main clause, they are separated by a **comma**.  
*Since you don't trust him, don't tell him anything.*

**But:** *Don't tell him anything since you don't trust him.*

*Although the soup was cold, he ate it.*

**But:** *He ate the soup although it was cold.*



## C. Clauses of Purpose

Purpose is expressed with the following structures:

Structures	Use	Examples
Infinitive	• informal structure	<i>I just called to invite you to a party.</i>
so as (not) to	• informal structures	<i>He walked in quietly so as not to wake up his parents.</i>
in order (not) to		<i>We are saving money in order to buy a new car.</i>
for + noun	• to express a person's intentions	<i>He went to the pub for a drink.</i>
for + -ing form	• to express the purpose or function of an item	<i>I use the electric knife for cutting meat.</i>
so that + can/may/will	• purpose with present or future time reference	<i>Please close the door so that the cat can't come in.</i>
so that + could/might/would	• purpose with past time reference	<i>He walked quietly so that nobody could hear his footsteps.</i>
in case + present tense	• purpose with present or future time reference	<i>I'll take an umbrella in case it rains.</i>
in case + past tense	• purpose with past time reference	<i>He gave me his telephone number in case I wanted to call him.</i>
with a view to <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">  </span> + -ing form with the aim of <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 0 2px;">  </span> + -ing form	• formal structure	<i>He took evening courses in Marketing with the aim of getting more qualifications.</i>
for fear / lest + subject + might/should for fear of + noun/-ing form	• negative purpose	<i>He fled his country for fear he might be arrested.</i> <i>He fled his country for fear of being arrested.</i>

### note

Clauses of purpose follow the rules of the sequence of tenses.

## D. Clauses of Result

Clauses of result express a deduction or the result of an action and are introduced with: **so...that, such...that**, etc.

Structures	Examples
such (a/an) + (adjective) + noun + that...	<i>He was such a wise man that everyone respected him.</i>
such a lot of + noun + that...	<i>They were such nice people that everyone enjoyed their company.</i> <i>Their new car cost such a lot of money that I wondered how they could afford it.</i>
so + adjective/adverb + that...	<i>The fog was so thick that we couldn't see across the street.</i>
so + <span style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px;">much, many little, few</span> + (noun) + that...	<i>He had made so many mistakes that he had to write his report again.</i>
so + adjective + a/an + noun + that...	<i>It was so boring a play that I nearly fell asleep.</i>
(and) so, (and) therefore ► <b>therefore</b> is more formal than <b>so</b>	<i>He had the qualifications required, so he got the job.</i>



## Grammar Practice

**A** Make one sentence using the words in brackets.

### Advertising Facts

Products are advertised mainly through the media. This way, consumers become familiar with the variety of products available. (so that)

Products are advertised mainly through the media so that consumers can/may/will become familiar with the variety of products available.

Large companies employ advertising agencies. They want to make their product attractive to consumers. (so as to)

Large companies employ advertising agencies so as to make their product attractive to consumers.

Companies spend millions of dollars on advertising. They want to increase their sales. (with the aim of)

Companies spend millions of dollars on advertising with the aim of increasing their sales.

Advertisers must consider their advertisements carefully. They can't afford to be accused of persuading people to buy things they don't need. (for fear of)

Advertisers must consider their advertisements carefully for fear of being accused of persuading people to buy things they don't need.

All advertisements are reviewed by a consumer protection agency. False information mustn't be given to the public. (in case)

All advertisements are reviewed by a consumer protection agency in case false information is given to the public.

**B** Read Martha's opinions. Continue the sentences using *so* or *such*.

### Martha's film reviews - See them if you dare!

The film "Walk in the Sky" was boring. I left halfway through.

The film was so boring that I left halfway through.

It was such a boring film/so boring a film that I left halfway through.

"Adventures in the Pacific", an animated film, has many funny characters. Both young and old will love it.

The film has such a lot of/so many funny characters that both young and old will love it.

There are so many/such a lot of funny characters in the film that both young and old will love it.

The film "Tough" has a lot of violence. Many people will refuse to see it.

The film has such a lot of/so much violence that many people will refuse to see it.

There is so much/such a lot of violence in the film that many people will refuse to see it.

The thriller "Cold Blood" was very frightening. I was on the edge of my seat the whole time.

The film was so frightening that I was on the edge of my seat the whole time.

It was such a frightening film/so frightening a film that I was on the edge of my seat the whole time.



### C Choose the correct answers.

a. \_\_\_\_\_ (1) I had set the alarm, it didn't go off, \_\_\_\_\_ (2) I was late for work. I've decided to go shopping today to buy a new alarm clock \_\_\_\_\_ (3) something like this happens again. I don't want to lose my job all \_\_\_\_\_ (4) of an alarm clock!

1.  a. Although      b. Because      c. Despite

2. a. since       b. so      c. because

3.  a. in case      b. so as      c. in order

4.  a. because      b. due      c. though

b. We have \_\_\_\_\_ (5) a lot of fun going on camping trips that we go at least twice a year. I've got all the necessary equipment, \_\_\_\_\_ (6) you can borrow \_\_\_\_\_ (7) you need. Just remember \_\_\_\_\_ (8) well you've planned the trip, expect the unexpected! Pack a first-aid kit, tins of food, bottles of water \_\_\_\_\_ (9) you'll be prepared for everything.

5.  a. such      b. so      c. therefore

6.  a. therefore      b. while      c. whereas

7. a. however       b. whatever      c. even though

8. a. no matter      b. because       c. however

9. a. in case       b. so that      c. so as



### D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Whatever they try to do, the police will stop them.

**no**      The police will stop them \_\_\_\_\_ no matter what they try \_\_\_\_\_ to do.

2. The road was slippery, so they couldn't drive fast.

**because**      They couldn't drive fast \_\_\_\_\_ because of the slippery \_\_\_\_\_ road.

3. I've brought some extra blankets because it might get colder at night.

**case**      I've brought some extra blankets \_\_\_\_\_ in case it gets colder \_\_\_\_\_ at night.

4. You know, I felt disappointed but I didn't give up trying.

**spite**      You know, in spite of feeling disappointed/my disappointment, I didn't give up trying.

5. She is very talented but she doesn't play the piano professionally.

**though**      Talented \_\_\_\_\_ though she is \_\_\_\_\_, she doesn't play the piano professionally.

6. The children hid the cake they had made because they wanted to surprise their mother.

**could**      The children hid the cake they had made \_\_\_\_\_ so that they could \_\_\_\_\_ surprise their mother.

7. Kate was too tired to do any housework.

**so**      Kate was \_\_\_\_\_ so tired that she \_\_\_\_\_ couldn't do any housework.

8. Paul went out even though he wasn't feeling well.

**fact**      Paul went out \_\_\_\_\_ despite the fact that he \_\_\_\_\_ wasn't feeling well.



## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

**settle down:** start living a quiet life in a place, especially after getting married or buying a house

**sit up:** take a sitting position after lying down or leaning back

**stand by:** (1) ready and waiting to provide help or take action  
(2) provide loyal support to sb

**stand out:** be noticeable

**stand up for:** defend sb or sth and make your feelings or opinions clear

1. Red is used to signify danger because it stands out among other colours.
2. All emergency rescue teams were standing by to help take care of the survivors of the plane crash.
3. Chris is too young to get married and settle down. He's only 18!
4. Always stand up for your beliefs.
5. You're well enough to sit up today, but don't get out of bed.

### B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.



**on the one/other hand:** from one point of view/from the opposite point of view

**on holiday:** on vacation, relaxing

**on one's mind:** in one's thoughts

**on one's own:** alone, without help

**on the phone:** having a telephone conversation

**on purpose:** deliberately, not by accident

**on the radio/television:** broadcast by radio or television stations

**on sale:** available to be bought in shops

**on second thought(s):** completely changing your mind about sth, reconsidering sth

**on strike:** refusing to work as a sign of protest

1. These diaries are on sale everywhere.
2. I was planning to go to the party but on second thoughts I won't, as I have to wake up early in the morning.
3. Can you please be quiet? I'm speaking on the phone.
4. The workers of this factory are on strike, demanding better working conditions.
5. There are too many commercials on television. It's so annoying when you're watching a good film.
6. We could always do the cooking for the party ourselves, but on the other hand/ on second thoughts it might be easier if we got a catering service to organise everything.
7. Did you really build this tree house on your own? That's great!
8. What's wrong? You look like you have a lot on your mind.
9. I'm sure he didn't do it on purpose. It must have been an accident.
10. I'm sorry but Mr Sullivan won't be able to help you. He's gone abroad on holiday for two weeks.



### C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### HOME SWEET HOME

What will homes be like by the year 2050? What improvements will there be in the general standard of living?

**IMPROVE**

Forget about entering the house with a key. Admittance will only be possible with a personal card.

**ADMIT**

**PERSON**

It will be of no importance if you leave lights or heaters on when you go out. They will be automatically switched off.

**IMPORTANT**

**AUTOMATIC**

The safety of your house will not be a problem. Protection against fire and intruders will be guaranteed.

**SAFE, PROTECT**

Doing the shopping, going to the bank, talking and seeing people on the other side of the world without leaving home will all be possible due to the existence of 21st century technology.

**EXIST**

Each home will have a central computer controlling all sorts of practical devices that will make life easier and more comfortable.

**CENTRE, PRACTICE**

### D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

**encourage** (v): give sb the confidence they need in order to do sth

**support** (v): (1) help, encourage  
(2) agree with or approve of sb's ideas or plans

**assist** (v): help sb finish their work or task

**aid** (v): (1) help or assist sb  
(2) provide a person, country or organisation with money, equipment or services they need

**help** (v): make it easier for sb to do sth, assist

**save** (v): help sb to avoid harm or to escape from a dangerous situation

**rescue** (v): get sb out of an unpleasant or dangerous situation

**defend** (v): take action in order to protect or support sb or sth

**guard** (v): watch over in order to protect or not allow to escape

**manage (to)** (v): (1) be responsible for a business or organisation  
(2) succeed in coping with difficulties

**control** (v): have the power to manipulate sth or make important decisions about it

**check** (v): examine sth to make sure that it is correct, accurate or of good quality

1. The parties in parliament are prepared to support the new tax laws.

2. My parents always encourage me to do my best.

3. The profits of the concert will go to aid the hungry in Africa.

4. The nurse assisted/ helped the doctor during the operation.

5. Could you help me get these curtains down?

6. There is an international campaign to save the whale from extinction.

7. The firemen rescued ten people from the burning building.

8. The National Bank is guarded by the police 24 hours a day.

9. Will you defend your country in time of war?

10. A computer controls the automatic doors at the airport.

11. How did you manage to get this old car running again?

12. Did you check the quality of the material?







**B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

- “Do you have anything to declare?” asked the customs officer.  
us      The customs officer asked us if we had anything to declare.
- Rosie had lost a lot of weight, so I hardly recognised her.  
much      Rosie had lost so much weight that I hardly recognised her.
- You know, Mr Davidson was ill, so he couldn't go to work for a week.  
illness      Mr Davidson couldn't go to work for a week because of/due to his illness, you know.
- They live in a modern and spacious apartment.  
where      The apartment where they live is modern and spacious.
- I'll leave only after you apologise for what you said.  
soon      I'll leave as soon as you apologise for what you said.
- You know, although she was angry, she managed to speak calmly.  
spite      You know, in spite of being angry/her anger, she managed to speak calmly.
- “I'll inform you next Monday,” Sally said to Mike.  
him      Sally told Mike that she would inform him the following Monday.
- Sally regrets not having entered the competition.  
wishes      Sally wishes she had entered the competition.

## Vocabulary Practice

**A Choose the correct answers.**

- Don't use that machine. It's out of \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. danger      b. work      c. control      **(d.) order**
- I'm here \_\_\_\_\_ behalf of the workers.  
a. for      b. in      **(c.) on**      d. at
- This material is different \_\_\_\_\_ the one I bought yesterday.  
a. for      b. with      c. of      **(d.) to**
- The shop assistant offered to \_\_\_\_\_ the gift for me.  
a. fasten      b. fold      **(c.) wrap**      d. tie
- My parents bought two dogs to \_\_\_\_\_ our house.  
a. defend      b. support      c. assist      **(d.) guard**
- The rock star gave only one \_\_\_\_\_ when he was on tour.  
**(a.) interview**      b. discussion      c. debate      d. dialogue
- He was so startled by the dog that he \_\_\_\_\_ the shopping bags he was carrying.  
a. spread      b. flooded      **(c.) dropped**      d. spilt
- I've never been to a tropical island but I can \_\_\_\_\_ how beautiful it must be.  
a. think      b. suppose      c. consider      **(d.) imagine**
- The school \_\_\_\_\_ all the students to take an interest in the arts.  
**(a.) encouraged**      b. regarded      c. supported      d. managed
- When ironing, I like to put the clothes in neat \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. packs      **(b.) piles**      c. bunches      d. heaps
- How did you \_\_\_\_\_ to stop little Lisa from crying?  
a. help      b. control      c. aid      **(d.) manage**



12. As I was going home, I \_\_\_\_\_ that I had left my keys at the office.  
 a. found out                      b. inspected                      **c. discovered**                      d. learnt
13. Whenever we go camping, we like to \_\_\_\_\_ the area for interesting plants and animals.  
 a. discover                      b. find out                      **c. explore**                      d. learn
14. I need a \_\_\_\_\_ of sugar from the supermarket.  
**a. packet**                      b. bundle                      c. package                      d. parcel
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ John Westwood yesterday! I hadn't seen him for ages!  
 a. stood by                      **b. ran into**                      c. ran along                      d. settled down

### B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. Students are under considerable stress when studying for exams. **CONSIDER**
2. It may seem unbelievable, but many people believe that UFOs exist. **BELIEVE**
3. Admittance/Admission to the concert is free for children under twelve. **ADMIT**
4. There was a(n) misunderstanding and as a result we failed to meet last night. **UNDERSTAND**
5. Those papers are unimportant. Just throw them out. **IMPORTANT**
6. These dresses are Townsend's latest creation(s). **CREATE**
7. Children have a lot of imagination. **IMAGINE**
8. We've made some improvements to our house. **IMPROVE**

### C Choose the correct answers.

It was in 776 BC in Olympia that the first recorded Olympic Games were held. The Ancient Greeks (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the games (2) \_\_\_\_\_ order to honour their gods. Thus, many religious ceremonies as well as sporting events took place during the Games.

Taking part in the Games was considered a great honour, and athletes travelled long distances so (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to participate. If the city states (4) \_\_\_\_\_ at war, they did not cancel the Games. They simply (5) \_\_\_\_\_ their differences until the Games were over.

The Games were banned in 393 AD by Emperor Theodosius I, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ disapproved of false gods and festivals. However, they were revived in 1896, by Baron Pierre de Coubertin, who (7) \_\_\_\_\_ them as a representation of ideals that the modern world needed. He (8) \_\_\_\_\_ that they symbolised the idea of cooperation between nations, honour, fairness, and high moral and physical standards.

1. a. set off                      3. **a. as**                      5. a. put on                      7. a. viewed  
**b. set up**                      b. that                      b. put away                      b. supposed  
 c. set out                      c. for                      **c. put aside**                      c. imagined  
 d. set in                      d. though                      d. put out                      **d. regarded**
2. **a. in**                      4. a. are                      6. a. which                      8. a. says  
 b. on                      b. had been                      b. whose                      **b. said**  
 c. at                      **c. were**                      c. whom                      c. has said  
 d. for                      d. will be                      **d. who**                      d. is saying



The linking words listed below join either main clauses or parts of the same sentence (not a main with a subordinate clause).

Linking words	Use	Examples
and, both...and, or, either...or, neither...nor	• co-ordination	<i>He is both lazy and irresponsible. Neither your parents nor your teachers would approve of such bad behaviour.</i>
too, not only...but also, not only...but...as well, as well as, besides, in addition to this, furthermore, what is more	• to give additional information	<i>As well as losing his job, he lost most of his friends.</i>
but, however, nevertheless, on the other hand, regardless of, yet, contrary to, in contrast to, in comparison to	• to express contrast	<i>She cooks well but she hates washing up afterwards. She was not prepared for the test; however, she managed to pass it.</i>
in fact, as a matter of fact, actually, indeed, to tell you the truth, strangely enough	• for emphasis	<i>To tell you the truth, I didn't know that he was leaving. We had a very good time, indeed.</i>
like, as, likewise, similarly, in the same way ▶ like + noun/pronoun/-ing form = similar to as + subject + verb = similar to ▶ as + article + noun describes sb's job or the function of sth	• manner or comparison	<i>Exercising strengthens our body; likewise, eating more vegetables improves our health. He behaves like a real gentleman. We left everything as we found it. She works as a shop assistant. I used a folded blanket as a pillow.</i>
like, such as, for example, for instance, especially, particularly, in particular	• to give an example	<i>Electronic devices such as mobile phones and personal stereos should not be used during the flight.</i>
in other words, specifically, to be (more) specific, that is to say, I mean	• to clarify the meaning of a sentence	<i>The company is facing financial difficulties; in other words, they cannot pay off their debts.</i>
so, therefore, otherwise, thus, in this case, for this reason, under those circumstances, consequently, as a consequence, as a result	• to express the results or the consequences of a situation	<i>Alex didn't sleep at all last night and consequently he feels very tired today.</i>
but (for), except (for), apart from	• exception	<i>Apart from her mother-in-law, everyone liked Sarah's wedding dress.</i>
<b>beginning:</b> initially, first, first of all, at first, to begin/start with <b>continuing:</b> second, secondly, after this/that, afterwards, then, next <b>concluding:</b> finally, lastly, last but not least, in the end, eventually, to conclude, in conclusion	• to organise the text	<i><b>First</b> you boil some salted water. <b>Then</b> you add the pasta and cook for ten minutes. <b>Finally</b> you drain the pasta, add some butter and serve immediately with your favourite sauce and grated cheese.</i>
regarding, considering, concerning, with respect/regard to, as for, as to	• for reference	<i>The government must take serious action with regard to the problem of pollution.</i>
to summarise, to sum up, in summary, in short, on the whole, (all) in all, altogether	• to summarise	<i>To summarise, this novel gives us a clear picture of life in the nineteenth century.</i>
in my opinion/view, according to, personally	• to give opinions	<i>According to most art critics, Guernica is a masterpiece of modern art.</i>



## Grammar Practice

### A Circle the correct answers.

**Regardless of** / **As for** what you may think and **apart from** / **contrary to** popular belief, pasta is not an Italian invention, **however** / **but** a Chinese one. **To be more specific** / **In addition to this**, legend has it that Marco Polo, the explorer, learnt the recipe for pasta from the Chinese **and** / **or** brought it to Italy.

Pasta is the most important food in Italy. **In fact** / **In short**, it is served **as** / **like** a starter to any meal. It is

**not only** / **both** popular in Italy **but** / **and** also in other countries, where it is served with different sauces.

**Concerning** / **Regarding** the sauces, there are so many that even the most fussy eaters are sure to find something they like.

### B Complete the sentences using the appropriate linking word from the box.

otherwise	not only...but also	neither...nor	to conclude	but for	personally
either...or	in comparison to	besides	in this case	however	next

- I agree with you. Personally, I believe that anything you learn is useful.
- To conclude my talk, I'd just like to emphasise how important it is to recycle anything we can.
- I'd like to visit Spain with you, however I can't get the time off work.
- You had better pack tonight, otherwise you'll have too much to do in the morning.
- And next on the show with us tonight, we have Mike Sullivan!
- I would have been in deep trouble but for my friend who is a lawyer.
- This house is very small in comparison to ours.
- He has many good qualities besides being very intelligent.
- Neither Michael nor Samantha are going on the excursion because they want to study for their exam.
- They not only made the wedding cake but also the appetisers.
- You weren't responsible for the accident. In this case, the other person must pay for the damage to your car.
- You can take either the blue bag or the green one. Not both!

### C Choose the correct answers.

\_\_\_\_\_ (1) historians, people were very superstitious in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. \_\_\_\_\_ (2), people were terrified of witches, and \_\_\_\_\_ (3), thought they were \_\_\_\_\_ (4) the devil.

\_\_\_\_\_ (5), witchcraft was considered to be one of the most serious crimes. \_\_\_\_\_ (6), anyone even suspected of being a witch was hunted down and \_\_\_\_\_ (7) put to death by hanging or by being burnt at the stake.

- a. Specifically      b. Concerning      **c. According to**
- a.** As a matter of fact      b. In the same way      c. On the other hand
- a. as well as      b. too      **c. furthermore**
- a. likewise      **b. like**      c. similarly
- a. Nevertheless      **b. Consequently**      c. However
- a.** Thus      b. Otherwise      c. Particularly
- a. secondly      **b. afterwards**      c. last but not least



\_\_\_\_\_ (8) these facts, one would think that they had some proof that these women were \_\_\_\_\_ (9) witches, and \_\_\_\_\_ (10) they didn't. \_\_\_\_\_ (11), there wasn't any real way of identifying a witch. \_\_\_\_\_ (12) they made up ways of identifying them. \_\_\_\_\_ (13), any natural marks \_\_\_\_\_ (14) moles or birthmarks, were thought to be "witch" marks. \_\_\_\_\_ (15), they used another terrible method of testing a "witch". They tied her up and \_\_\_\_\_ (16) threw her into a river. \_\_\_\_\_ (17), it was thought that the guilty would float (because people \_\_\_\_\_ (18) believed that water rejected evil) \_\_\_\_\_ (19) the innocent would drown. \_\_\_\_\_ (20) those who floated, they were later killed anyway. It wasn't until the late seventeenth century, as scientific knowledge increased, that belief in witchcraft \_\_\_\_\_ (21) began to fade, and the "witch laws" were \_\_\_\_\_ (22) abolished in 1736. \_\_\_\_\_ (23) the last English execution, that was in Exeter in 1684.

8. a. With regard      b. Altogether      c. Considering
9. a. to tell you the truth      b. indeed      c. especially
10. a. however      b. yet      c. but
11. a. As a result      b. Otherwise      c. In fact
12. a. For this reason      b. In this case      c. In other words
13. a. Similarly      b. Such as      c. For instance
14. a. such as      b. as for      c. but for
15. a. What is more      b. In addition to      c. On the whole
16. a. second      b. after that      c. initially
17. a. Therefore      b. In conclusion      c. Strangely enough
18. a. both      b. actually      c. besides
19. a. and      b. as      c. otherwise
20. a. Besides      b. As for      c. Except
21. a. eventually      b. lastly      c. then
22. a. last but not least      b. yet      c. finally
23. a. To summarise      b. With regard to      c. In the end

**D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

1. I must admit that I haven't read the report yet.  
**tell**      To tell you the truth, I haven't read the report yet.
2. We are supposed to meet again in a week's time, which is next Thursday.  
**say**      We are supposed to meet again in a week's time, that is to say next Thursday.
3. You know, she's a good swimmer but she also plays tennis very skillfully.  
**well**      You know, as well as being a good swimmer, she plays tennis very skillfully.
4. We could visit them or we could call them instead.  
**either**      We could either visit or call them.
5. You should not only give up smoking but also follow a healthier diet.  
**addition**      You should follow a healthier diet in addition to giving up smoking.
6. The article was not only interesting but also informative, you know.  
**both**      The article was both interesting and informative, you know.
7. The truth is that he doesn't enjoy travelling very much.  
**fact**      As a matter of fact, he doesn't enjoy travelling very much.
8. I had to repeat the exam because I failed it.  
**consequence**      I failed the exam and as a consequence I had to repeat it.



## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

**take after:** look like sb, resemble

**take off:** (1) leave the ground (aeroplane) (2) remove (clothes)

**take on:** accept a job or responsibility

**take over:** win control or management of sth

**take up:** begin or become interested in a new hobby or activity

1. The baby takes after his father. He's got the same blue eyes.
2. You shouldn't take on any more responsibilities if you feel you won't be able to handle them.
3. The two brothers took over the company when their father died.
4. The plane had to make an emergency landing only a few minutes after it had taken off.

### B Complete using prepositions.



1. She was angry with/at me for forgetting her birthday.
2. He shouted at me for no reason at all.
3. Will you forgive me for being so selfish?
4. You can't always blame everyone else for your mistakes.
5. They accused him of stealing the money from the counter.
6. He was charged with murder and had to appear in court the next day.
7. Kate apologised to us for being late.
8. I disagree with the government's policy concerning traffic regulations.
9. I'm having trouble with my car. Could you help me start it?
10. Three young men have been arrested for breaking into the building.
11. The football team put the blame on the referee for not winning the game.
12. It's no use arguing with them; their decision is final.



## C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

### MAKING IT A BETTER PLACE TO LIVE

At times, it seems that people have no sense of **responsibility** towards their environment. They have the **tendency** to **carelessly** drop their rubbish wherever they happen to be, even when there is no **shortage** of rubbish bins. However, this must change.

Littering doesn't only make a place look ugly, it also puts public health at risk and can **endanger** wildlife. The authorities need to become more **informative** about how pollution affects our everyday lives, providing the community with a better **education** concerning the preservation of the environment.

There is no quick or simple solution. One thing is certain, though. **Failure** to act now will in the long term mean a great **loss**. The **choice** is ours!

**RESPONSE**

**TEND, CARE**

**SHORT**

**DANGER, INFORM**

**EDUCATE**

**FAIL**

**LOSE, CHOOSE**

## D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

<b>bite</b> (v):	use your teeth to cut into sth
<b>sip</b> (v):	drink sth slowly by taking a small quantity at a time
<b>chew</b> (v):	break up food in your mouth (using your teeth) in order to swallow it
<b>gulp</b> (v):	eat or drink sth quickly by swallowing large quantities
<b>swallow</b> (v):	cause sth to go from your mouth down into your stomach

<b>food</b> (n):	what people or animals eat
<b>meal</b> (n):	the food you eat for breakfast, lunch or dinner
<b>course</b> (n):	one part of a meal (starter-main course-dessert)
<b>dish</b> (n):	food prepared in a particular style or combination

<b>book</b> (v):	(a hotel room, ticket, lesson, etc.) reserve sth, arrange to have or use it at a particular time
<b>reserve</b> (v):	(a table, ticket, magazine, seat, etc.) arrange for it to be kept especially for you

- Doctors say that we should always **chew** our food well before swallowing it.
- She **gulped** down her milk as she was late for school.
- Ouch! I **bit** my tongue by mistake.
- The little boy **swallowed** a coin accidentally and was taken to hospital.
- We sat there for over an hour while he just **sipped** his coffee without saying a word.
- I never have three **meals** a day; I usually skip lunch.
- The national **dish** of Greece is moussaka.
- I don't think we should cook any **food** for the party. We can order pizzas.
- We were offered a three- **course** dinner.
- Diana **booked** her flight three weeks beforehand.
- Could I **reserve** a table for two for Saturday evening, please?



# unit | 23 | Participles

## Participles as adjectives

### Present Participle (-ing)

**Present participles** as adjectives have an **active** meaning and describe a person, thing or event.

*He is a hard-working person.*

*It was a very boring play.*

*The film was fascinating.*

### Past Participle (-ed)

**Past participles** as adjectives have a **passive** meaning and describe a person's feelings or attitudes.

*He looks exhausted.*

*The audience was utterly bored.*

*Everyone was fascinated by the film.*

## Participles replacing clauses

### A. The present participle is used:

- to replace a clause of time introduced with **when, while, as, after, before**, etc.
- ▶ for a lengthy action interrupted by a shorter or sudden one.
- ▶ for an action taking place at the same time as another one.
- ▶ for an action taking place immediately before another one.

### Examples

*Walking home, she was attacked by a dog. (As she was walking home, she was attacked by a dog.)*

*I arrived at the examination centre feeling very nervous. (When I arrived at the examination centre, I was feeling very nervous.)*

*Opening the door, I found two letters on the floor. (As I opened the door, I found two letters on the floor.)*

- to replace a clause of manner.

*Reading books, he managed to improve his vocabulary. (He managed to improve his vocabulary by reading books.)*

- to replace a clause of reason introduced with **because, since, as, for**.

*Not wanting to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop. (As they didn't want to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop.)*

- to replace a relative clause in the active voice.

*The girl talking to Jim is my sister. (The girl who is talking to Jim is my sister.)*

### B. The past participle is used:

- instead of a subject + verb in the passive voice.
- to replace a relative clause in the passive voice.
- to replace a conditional sentence containing passive voice.

*Shocked by the tragedy, they didn't know what to say. (They were shocked by the tragedy and didn't know what to say.)*

*Clothes made in France and Italy are very elegant. (Clothes which are made in France and Italy are very elegant.)*

*Stored in the fridge, the pudding will keep for up to one week. (If it is stored in the fridge, the pudding will keep for up to one week.)*

### C. The perfect participle is used for an action that happened before another one in the past.

- **Active voice:** having + past participle
- **Passive voice:** having been + past participle

*Having finished cleaning up, she started cooking. (She finished cleaning up and then she started cooking.)*

*Having been seriously injured, the driver was rushed to hospital. (The driver had been seriously injured and was rushed to hospital.)*

**note** • Participles are sometimes accompanied by **when, while, before, after, if, though**.

*He noticed the scratch while washing his car.*

- If a participle is at the beginning of a sentence, its subject is the same as that of the main verb:  
*Crossing the road, I was nearly knocked down by a car.*

**But:** *Pushing the button, the lift moved up to the third floor.* (This would mean that the lift pushed the button.)

- If the subject of the participle is different from the subject of the verb, it goes at the beginning of the sentence.

*Weather permitting, we may drive to the beach.*



## Grammar Practice

### A Complete using adjectives ending in *-ing* or *-ed*.

- We found Egypt fascinating (fascinate).
- Karen was surprised (surprise) by the news.
- He was a loving (love) father to all his children.
- We were amazed (amaze) to see so many birds.
- I am very pleased (please) with my results.
- The most annoying (annoy) thing was the heat.
- The doctor is concerned (concern) about your health.
- Fairy tales are enchanting (enchant). Don't you agree?
- The film was very boring (bore).
- The trip was great but exhausting (exhaust).



### B Complete using the present, the past or the perfect participle of the verbs in the brackets.

- Making (make) the salad, I cut my finger.
- Warned/Having been warned (warn) about the bad weather, they cancelled the fishing trip.
- Reading/Having read (read) the book, I wrote down some notes.
- Beaten (beat) well, the mixture will thicken.
- Having polished (polish) his car, he then vacuumed it.
- The man giving (give) the speech is my son.
- Not feeling (not feel) well, the boy left school early.
- Surprised (surprise) by the event, we didn't know what to say.
- Not knowing (not know) where to go, I asked for directions.
- Trapped/Having been trapped (trap) in the car, they waited for help.
- The dry cleaner ruined my coat while cleaning (clean) it.
- The food eaten (eat) by the guests had been prepared by caterers.
- The film, being (be) a great success, will be made into a film.
- Only articles written (write) by students will appear in the school's newspaper.
- Having spent (spend) all my money, I asked my brother to lend me some.

### C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- Don't forget to turn off the oven before you leave the house.  
**leaving** Don't forget to turn off the oven before leaving the house.
- You know, after painting the flat, it looked new.  
**been** You know, having been painted, the flat looked new.
- The children's performance at the concert was very impressive.  
**audience** The audience was very impressed by the children's performance at the concert.
- Well, we decided to walk to work because the bus drivers were on strike.  
**being** Well, the bus drivers being on strike, we decided to walk to work.
- If you look after it properly, the goldfish will live for at least two years.  
**looked** The goldfish will live for at least two years if looked after properly.



6. Unfortunately, I watched TV the whole afternoon and I didn't manage to finish my homework.  
**spent** Unfortunately, having spent the whole afternoon watching TV, I didn't manage to finish my homework.
7. Anyone who doesn't pass the test must sit it again.  
**not** Anyone not passing the test, must sit it again.
8. I found that working six days a week tired me.  
**was** Working six days a week was tiring for me.

## Vocabulary Practice

### A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

- turn down:** (1) reject, refuse to accept sth (2) reduce the amount of sound, heat etc. produced by a piece of equipment
- turn off:** switch off
- turn on:** switch on
- turn out:** result in a particular way and have the degree of success indicated
- turn over:** move sth so that the top part is facing downwards
- turn up:** (1) arrive unexpectedly (2) increase the amount of sound, heat etc. produced by a piece of equipment

- Don't forget to turn the television off before you go out.
- Guess who turned up at the party!
- The teacher told us to turn over the page and begin the next exercise.
- Thank you for your offer, but I'm afraid I'll have to turn it down.
- It's dark, why haven't you turned on the lights yet?
- If I had known the cake would have turned out like this, I never would have attempted to make it.

### B Choose the correct answers.

- I'm experienced \_\_\_\_\_ computer programming.  
 a. in                      b. at                      c. about
- There are quite a few people who suffer \_\_\_\_\_ headaches.  
a. with                       b. from                      c. by
- I don't think I could cope \_\_\_\_\_ so much work.  
 a. with                      b. for                      c. about
- Kim believes that German cars are superior \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese ones.  
 a. to                      b. from                      c. than
- How did you succeed \_\_\_\_\_ finding a job so soon?  
a. with                      b. about                       c. in
- I have difficulty \_\_\_\_\_ understanding Geometry.  
a. about                       b. in                      c. with
- John is clever \_\_\_\_\_ making up stories.  
a. in                      b. with                       c. at
- Jane is really good \_\_\_\_\_ painting.  
 a. at                      b. for                      c. with
- The president is capable \_\_\_\_\_ cancelling the meeting.  
a. for                      b. with                       c. of
- I'm hopeless \_\_\_\_\_ sports.  
a. in                       b. at                      c. with



## C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

### WEATHER PERMITTING

The weather is an important topic of conversation for the British, but in 1995 they had more to talk about than usual. In comparison to other years, it was a year with very unusual weather patterns. A rainy spring, the wettest ever recorded, the hottest summer and one of the coldest winters they had ever experienced. In fact, since the beginning of the 1970s, rainfall during storms has increased dramatically all over the world. As a result, complaints about changing weather conditions are common. But why are we having all these changes?

Climatologists and scientists, after a lot of investigation, agree that global warming is to blame for this. However, they are not all in agreement as to how this will affect us. Warnings given by some climatologists say that if we don't prepare for droughts and floods, we will face problems like starvation. Others say that winters will be warmer, so the growth of more crops in more places will be possible. In any case, it seems that we should all be prepared to experience changes in the climate and learn to live with them.

CONVERSE

COMPARE

RAIN

BEGIN

COMPLAIN

SCIENCE, INVESTIGATE

WARN

STARVE

GROW

## D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

<b>rob</b> (v):	steal money or property from sb
<b>steal</b> (v):	take sth away without permission or intention of giving it back
<b>kidnap</b> (v):	take sb away by force and hold them prisoner in order to demand sth from their family or the government

<b>robber</b> (n):	person who steals from a bank, shop or vehicle using force or threats
<b>thief</b> (n):	person who steals from sb else
<b>burglar</b> (n):	person who enters a building illegally, with the intention of stealing
<b>kidnapper</b> (n):	criminal who kidnaps another person

<b>investigation</b> (n):	the act of finding out the truth about an event
<b>search</b> (n):	attempt to find sb or sth by carefully looking for them
<b>research</b> (n):	the act of studying or examining sth in order to find out facts about it

- Many banks in this area have been robbed.
- The masked men kidnapped the child and asked for one million dollars ransom.
- The store detective saw the girls stealing cosmetics.
- A burglar/thief broke into our house and stole our video and TV set.
- The kidnapper told the police where they were holding the woman.
- The robber/thief pointed his gun at the cashier and demanded all the money.
- The car thief was caught while breaking into a car.
- Research has shown that one in three marriages end in divorce.
- The investigation into the plane crash showed that it had been caused by computer failure.
- The search for the missing children continued throughout the night.



# Emphatic/Exclamatory Structures - Inversion

## A. Emphatic Structures

Emphatic structures are used to emphasise a part of the sentence.

### Statements

- **It is/was + ... + that/who(m)**

*Sue gave Peter a watch for his birthday last week. →*

- *It was Sue that gave Peter a watch for his birthday last week.*
- *It was a watch that Sue gave Peter for his birthday last week.*
- *It was Peter that Sue gave a watch to for his birthday last week.*
- *It was for his birthday that Sue gave Peter a watch last week.*
- *It was last week that Sue gave Peter a watch for his birthday.*

- **That is/was + question word + subject + verb**

*That's why he was so upset.*

- **Question word + subject + verb + is/was**

*What her secret was is something that we'll never learn.*

- **Subject + do/does/did + bare infinitive**, in the Present or Past Simple and Imperative.

*She does eat cereal every morning.*

*They did get a divorce eventually.*

*Do come with us tonight!*

### Questions

- **Is/Was it + ... + that/who(m)...?**

*Is it your car that is parked outside?*

*Is it Angela that/who(m) you are going to invite?*

- **Question word + ever**, to express anger, admiration, concern, etc.

*Whatever happened to them? They're late.*

- **Is/Was that + question word + subject + verb...?**

*Is that why you don't want to see him again?*

- **Question word + is/was it that + subject + verb...?**

*Why is it that you are so absent-minded?*

## B. Exclamatory Structures

Exclamatory structures express surprise, shock, fear, anger, admiration, etc.

Structure	Examples
What + (a/an) + (adjective) + noun	<i>What an interesting story!</i> <i>What beautiful houses! What bad behaviour!</i>
How + adjective/adverb (+ subject + verb) How + adjective + a/an + noun	<i>How beautiful she is! How tactfully they behave!</i> <i>How fascinating a story!</i>
How + subject + verb	<i>How she sings!</i>
...such + (a/an) + (adjective) + noun	<i>This is such a big house!</i> <i>I've never heard such nonsense!</i>
...so + adjective + a/an + noun ...so + adjective/adverb	<i>It was so generous an offer!</i> <i>He is so polite! She speaks so calmly!</i>
negative question	<i>Isn't it funny? Isn't that a pity?</i>
Here/There + verb + noun (inversion) Here/There + pronoun + verb	<i>Here comes the Prince of Wales.</i> <i>There he goes!</i>
You + (adjective) + noun	<i>You (cruel) murderer! You lucky man!</i>



## C. Inversion

When some words or expressions (usually with a negative or a restrictive meaning) are at the beginning of a sentence, the sentence is formed like a question (the auxiliary is placed before the subject). This is called **inversion** and is used for emphasis.

Words and expressions	Examples
Never (before), Rarely, Seldom, Barely, Scarcely...when, Hardly (ever)...when, No sooner...than	<i>Never in my life had I felt so embarrassed.</i> <i>Rarely does he use his credit card.</i> <i>No sooner had I told him the news than everybody in the village knew it!</i>
Only Not only....but also	<i>Only when you see her will you realise how much she has changed.</i> <i>Only in an emergency should you dial 999.</i> <i>Not only did I lock the door, but I also secured the windows.</i>
Expressions with <b>not</b> : Not (even) once, Not often, Not until, etc.	<i>Not even once did she look in this direction.</i> <i>Not until I saw him in person did I realise how tall he was.</i>
Expressions with <b>no</b> : On no account, Under no circumstances, By no means, At no time, In no way, Nowhere, etc.	<i>In no way is he to blame for what happened.</i> <i>Under no circumstances would he accept my proposal.</i>
Little	<i>Little did he know about the surprise that awaited him.</i>
So + adjective/adverb	<i>So bad was the concert that we left during the intermission.</i>

### note

**Inversion is also used in the following structures:**

- after **so** and **as** to agree with affirmative statements.  
*Julie speaks French and so do her parents. (=her parents do, too.)*  
*The actors performed brilliantly, as did the dancers.*
- after **neither** and **nor** to agree with negative statements.  
*I don't like baseball. Neither does my brother. (=my brother doesn't either.)*
- with **should, were, had** in conditional sentences when **if** is omitted.  
*Should you meet John, give him my best regards.*  
*Had there been a telephone nearby, I would have called the police.*
- in exclamatory sentences beginning with **Here/There** when the subject is a noun (not a pronoun).  
*Here comes the bus! **But:** Here it comes!*

## Grammar Practice

**A** Rewrite the sentences using the appropriate emphatic structure to emphasise the words in bold type.

1. We bought the farm **last year**.

*It was last year that we bought the farm.*

2. He **works** sixteen hours a day.

*He does work sixteen hours a day.*

3. Craig broke **the window**.

*It was the window that Craig broke. **or** What Craig broke was the window.*

4. I bought the seat covers **for my new car**.

*It is/was for my new car that I bought the seat covers.*

5. Is **Tom** going to buy the food?

*Is it Tom that/who is going to buy the food?*

6. Chris sold his car to **Mary**.

*It was Mary that Chris sold his car to.*



7. **Who** took my CDs?

Whoever took my CDs? or Who was it that took my CDs?

8. Is that your **briefcase** on the table?

Is it your briefcase that is on the table?

**B Complete the sentences using exclamatory structures.**

1. They are disciplined dogs.

Aren't they disciplined dogs!

How disciplined dogs they are!/disciplined the dogs are!

What disciplined dogs!

They are such disciplined dogs!

2. It was a pleasant surprise.

How pleasant the surprise was!/pleasant a surprise!

It was such a pleasant surprise!/was so pleasant a surprise!

Wasn't it a pleasant surprise!

What a pleasant surprise it was!

3. You are a rude person.

What a rude person you are!

You are such a rude person!/so rude (a person)!

How rude (a person) you are!

You rude person!

4. This is terrible weather.

The weather is so terrible!

How terrible the weather is!

Isn't this terrible weather!/this weather terrible!

What terrible weather this is!



**C Choose the correct answers.**

1. "I was having a shower when the water was cut off."

"\_\_\_\_\_! And I still had shampoo in my hair!"

- (a) So was I                      b. So I was                      c. Nor was I

2. "Jane can read and write Italian."

"Wendy \_\_\_\_\_. And she also speaks French."

- (a) can too                      b. can so                      c. can't either

3. "We didn't watch the match last night."

"We \_\_\_\_\_."

- a. did too                      (b) didn't either                      c. so did

4. "We'll be visiting Mexico this Christmas."

"\_\_\_\_\_ Christine. You could go together."

- a. Neither will                      b. So does                      (c) So will

5. "I only buy recycled paper."

"\_\_\_\_\_ Harry."

- (a) So does                      b. Neither does                      c. So is



**C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)**

- You should never use a lift immediately after an earthquake.  
**account** On no account should you use a lift immediately after an earthquake.
- We had never listened to such an interesting speech.  
**before** Never before had we listened to such an interesting speech.
- They wouldn't reject such an offer.  
**means** By no means would they reject such an offer.
- Julie had just arrived when the lights went out.  
**sooner** No sooner had Julie arrived than the lights went out.
- I never received good marks in Maths at school.  
**receive** Not once did I receive good marks in Maths at school.
- The waitress told me that the restaurant was about to close and I had scarcely started eating.  
**when** Hardly had I started eating when the waitress told me that the restaurant was about to close.
- He can't leave the court until he has testified.  
**can** Not until he has testified can he leave the court.
- You mustn't interrupt me during the meeting.  
**no** Under no circumstances must you interrupt me during the meeting.

## Vocabulary Practice

**A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.**

<b>wash up:</b>	wash dishes and other kitchen utensils
<b>watch out:</b>	be careful
<b>wear out:</b>	become thin, weak or unsuitable for further use
<b>to be worn out:</b>	to be tired or bored of sth or sb
<b>work out:</b>	(1) find a solution to a problem (2) take part in physical exercise

- You must always watch out for jellyfish when you swim there.
- Could you explain this exercise to me? I just can't work out the answer.
- Jack, it's your turn to wash up tonight.
- I'm always worn out when I get home from work.
- This is the second pair of shoes you've worn out this month.

**B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.**

<b>to one's amazement /surprise:</b>	surprised, usually by sth unexpected
<b>under arrest:</b>	held by the police (as a suspect for a crime)
<b>under control:</b>	controlled
<b>under the impression:</b>	believing that this is the case
<b>under pressure:</b>	pressured
<b>without (a) doubt:</b>	definitely true, undoubtedly
<b>without delay:</b>	immediately, as soon as possible
<b>without fail/success:</b>	successfully/ unsuccessfully
<b>without warning:</b>	unexpectedly, without letting sb know in advance

- Without (a) doubt, that's the best film I've ever seen.
- For some reason, Louise was under the impression that we were going to a Chinese restaurant.
- Some friends arrived without warning after midnight.
- To my amazement/ surprise, I passed the test. I thought that I had failed it.
- We participated in the competition, however without any success.
- The firemen quickly got the fire under control.
- Send this package off without delay. It must get there today.
- Jack is always under pressure before he goes on holiday. He wants to get things finished before he leaves.
- The policeman told the thief that he was under arrest.



### C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

#### AND THEY'RE STILL STANDING...

It is indeed quite an achievement that many ancient buildings are still standing, while a lot of modern buildings collapse with the slightest movement of the earth. This seems unacceptable, considering the advances in technology. As a result, engineers receive a lot of criticism, especially when lives are lost.

One of the reasons why ancient buildings still stand is because they are conservative structures. The pyramids are a good example. Their huge weight is spread over a wide area, so they cannot topple over.

Today, engineers want to create new designs which have never been tested before, so they rely on computers for safety predictions. However, these may be incorrect or misleading and could cause the destruction of the building in the future.

Prevention of disasters is something that engineers should pay more attention to. This is sometimes difficult, as costs must be kept down. Perfection cannot always be achieved, but safety should be their main priority.

**ACHIEVE**  
**MOVE**  
**ACCEPT**  
**CRITICISE**

**WEIGH**

**CORRECT**  
**DESTROY**

**PREVENT, ATTEND**  
**PERFECT**

### D Complete using the words given.

**sunrise** (n): when the sun first appears in the sky in the morning  
**sunset** (n): when the sun disappears from the sky in the evening  
**sunshine** (n): light and heat coming from the sun  
**sunlight** (n): light coming from the sun during the day  
**shade** (n): area protected from bright sunlight  
**shadow** (n): dark shape on a surface caused by sth standing between the light and the surface

**season** (n): one of the four main periods - each with typical weather conditions - into which a year is divided  
**climate** (n): general weather conditions that characterise a place  
**weather** (n): conditions of the atmosphere in one area at a particular time

- I enjoy sitting in the sunshine at outdoor cafes in spring.
- I love big windows as they let in a lot of sunlight.
- The length of a shadow depends on the time of day.
- People gather here in the evening to watch the sunset.
- We woke up very early in the morning to watch the sunrise.
- In summer, it's advisable to sit in the shade.
- The climate in Greece is warm and dry.
- The weather forecast for tomorrow is fine and sunny.
- My favourite season is spring when flowers bloom.



## Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ the room, I noticed it had been renovated.  
 (a) Entering                      b. Entered                      c. Having been entered                      d. Having entering
2. The weather was warm, \_\_\_\_\_ he took some jumpers with him as well.  
 a. on the other hand                      b. therefore                      (c) nevertheless                      d. otherwise
3. \_\_\_\_\_ buying paint, I bought some paintbrushes.  
 (a) In addition to                      b. Furthermore                      c. As well                      d. What is more
4. Jack won't come to the meeting and \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. Betty won't too                      (b) neither will Betty                      c. nor won't Betty                      d. Betty won't neither
5. \_\_\_\_\_ by a snake, I was rushed to hospital.  
 (a) Bitten                      b. Having bitten                      c. Biting                      d. Been bitten
6. What \_\_\_\_\_ something nobody knows.  
 a. are his plans is                      (b) his plans are is                      c. are his plans that is                      d. his plans are it is
7. \_\_\_\_\_ the facts, she must be guilty.  
 a. In conclusion                      b. Indeed                      (c) Considering                      d. In my opinion
8. At no time \_\_\_\_\_ the house.  
 a. left they                      (b) did they leave                      c. they left                      d. they did leave
9. The house needs painting, \_\_\_\_\_ the bedrooms.  
 a. according to                      b. with regard                      (c) in particular                      d. in conclusion
10. "I don't like football".  
 "\_\_\_\_\_".  
 a. Neither my sister does                      (b) Neither does my sister                      c. My sister doesn't neither                      d. Nor doesn't my sister
11. Cars \_\_\_\_\_ in Japan are very reliable.  
 a. having manufactured                      b. have been manufactured                      c. manufacturing                      (d) manufactured
12. It is the most \_\_\_\_\_ film I've ever watched.  
 a. bored                      b. bore                      (c) boring                      d. boredom
13. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ the report, but I also e-mailed it.  
 a. didn't I type                      b. I did type                      c. did I typed                      (d) did I type
14. I don't want to go; \_\_\_\_\_, I'm not coming with you.  
 (a) in other words                      b. in the other words                      c. last but not least                      d. strangely enough
15. No sooner had the guests left \_\_\_\_\_ she started tidying up.  
 a. when                      (b) than                      c. before                      d. while











# Final FCE Test

## PART 1

For questions 1-12, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each gap. Mark your answers on the separate answer sheet.

### SUMMER HOLIDAYS DON'T MEAN RELAXATION

Holidays, holidays, holidays! That's all you hear before summer begins. Everyone is busy planning and booking ahead. Many (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to their break for months and are in a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of excitement for weeks before they leave. People have their cars serviced and go shopping to buy (3) \_\_\_\_\_ clothes.

I suppose it's logical, I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ after a whole year of work, people want to relax and (5) \_\_\_\_\_

themselves of some stress. However, I have my (6) \_\_\_\_\_ about summer holidays. It's the time when people vacate the city and go to summer resorts (7) \_\_\_\_\_ find that everyone else has done the same thing. Places are very crowded. You go to restaurants where you have to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to be served, the room you had booked is next to a nightclub and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ is expensive.

(10) \_\_\_\_\_ you finally get back, you feel so tired that you need another holiday to get (11) \_\_\_\_\_ the one you just had. I sometimes wonder if going on holiday is worth all that preparation and (12) \_\_\_\_\_.

### ANSWER SHEET

1	A look forward	B expect	C anticipate	D wait	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
2	A situation	B circumstance	C state	D position	2	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
3	A correct	B relevant	C right	D appropriate	3	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> D
4	A say	B mean	C express	D remark	4	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
5	A relieve	B take off	C remove	D shake off	5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
6	A uncertainties	B hesitations	C dilemmas	D doubts	6	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> D
7	A only to	B such as	C so that	D even though	7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
8	A insist on	B call for	C demand	D command	8	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
9	A whole	B everything	C entire	D total	9	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
10	A Until	B While	C As	D When	10	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> D
11	A over	B by	C off	D out of	11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
12	A annoyance	B problem	C inconvenience	D disturbance	12	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D



## PART 2

For questions 13-24, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. Write your answers in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

### THE LIFE CYCLE OF THE EMPEROR PENGUIN

The Emperor Penguin is the largest penguin, standing over one metre tall. Its life cycle is something extraordinary and rather different (13) \_\_\_\_\_ that of other animals.

The Antarctic summer (Dec-Feb) is the time when the Emperor Penguins have a "holiday" and they feed in the sea. During the month of March, they set off for their long journey south to the place where they breed and lay their eggs. As the long, dark winter arrives, each female lays one egg directly on the ice. The male immediately lifts the egg off the ice onto his feet. He (14) \_\_\_\_\_ pushes it under his stomach for warmth.

The female has completed her task and can now return to the sea to feed, leaving the male with the egg. For over two months, (15) \_\_\_\_\_ the males huddle together (16) \_\_\_\_\_ keep warm. (17) \_\_\_\_\_ other animal except for the penguin can survive in temperatures of  $-70^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

The chick will hatch during July. That's (18) \_\_\_\_\_ the female returns bringing food for her chick. By that time the male penguin will have lost about half his body weight, because he won't have eaten (19) \_\_\_\_\_ for five months. As (20) \_\_\_\_\_ as the female returns, the male leaves in search of food.

For the next six months, both parents take turns looking (21) \_\_\_\_\_ the chick. (22) \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning of the following summer, the (23) \_\_\_\_\_ family goes to the sea. The adults can at last have a two-month break before (24) \_\_\_\_\_ cycle begins again.

#### ANSWER SHEET

DO NOT  
WRITE HERE

13	to/from	13 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
14	then	14 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
15	all	15 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
16	to	16 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
17	No	17 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
18	when	18 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
19	anything	19 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
20	soon	20 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
21	after	21 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
22	At	22 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
23	whole	23 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>
24	another/a/the	24 <input type="text"/> <input type="text"/>



## PART 3

For questions 25-34, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. Write your answers in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

### MAGAZINES

Magazines are big business. A large (25) \_\_\_\_\_ of the population buy them (26) \_\_\_\_\_. In fact, some people even get their magazines brought to their home by a (27) \_\_\_\_\_ service. For others, magazines are an (28) \_\_\_\_\_ and they even collect them.

But magazines are not to my (29) \_\_\_\_\_. They have ads promising a (30) \_\_\_\_\_ appearance with the use of certain products. They also print (31) \_\_\_\_\_ and unreliable information. Apart from that, they fill their pages with photos of (32) \_\_\_\_\_ clothes. What a waste of money! I admit that I'll (33) \_\_\_\_\_ buy one when going on a trip, but short novels or comics are always (34) \_\_\_\_\_, as far as I'm concerned.

MAJOR  
REGULAR  
DELIVER  
OBSESS  
LIKE  
DESIRE  
ACCURATE  
FASHION  
OCCASION  
PREFER

### ANSWER SHEET

DO NOT  
WRITE HERE

25	majority	25 □ □
26	regularly	26 □ □
27	delivery	27 □ □
28	obsession	28 □ □
29	liking	29 □ □
30	desirable	30 □ □
31	inaccurate	31 □ □
32	fashionable	32 □ □
33	occasionally	33 □ □
34	preferable	34 □ □



## PART 4

For questions 35-42, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Write the missing words in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

35. "Did you go to the swimming pool yesterday?"

Macey asked me.

**whether**

Macey asked \_\_\_\_\_ to the swimming pool the previous day.

### ANSWER SHEET

DO NOT  
WRITE HERE

35	<b>me whether I had gone</b>	35	<u>  0  </u>	<u>  1  </u>	<u>  2  </u>
----	------------------------------	----	--------------	--------------	--------------

36. He didn't say anything although he was dissatisfied with the service at the hotel.

**spite**

He didn't say anything \_\_\_\_\_ with the service at the hotel.

36	<b>in spite of being dissatisfied/ his dissatisfaction</b>	36	<u>  0  </u>	<u>  1  </u>	<u>  2  </u>
----	--	----	--------------	--------------	--------------

37. I can't stand people interrupting me when I'm studying.

**rather**

I'd \_\_\_\_\_ me when I'm studying.

37	<b>rather people didn't interrupt</b>	37	<u>  0  </u>	<u>  1  </u>	<u>  2  </u>
----	---------------------------------------	----	--------------	--------------	--------------

38. We must return the books to the library by Wednesday.

**taken**

The books \_\_\_\_\_ to the library by Wednesday.

38	<b>must be taken (back)</b>	38	<u>  0  </u>	<u>  1  </u>	<u>  2  </u>
----	-----------------------------	----	--------------	--------------	--------------

39. The house will need painting before we move in.

**have**

We'll need \_\_\_\_\_ before we move in.

39	<b>to have the house painted</b>	39	<u>  0  </u>	<u>  1  </u>	<u>  2  </u>
----	----------------------------------	----	--------------	--------------	--------------

40. Mike, I'd like to know the name of the hotel you stayed at.

**which**

Mike, \_\_\_\_\_ at?

40	<b>which hotel did you stay</b>	40	<u>  0  </u>	<u>  1  </u>	<u>  2  </u>
----	---------------------------------	----	--------------	--------------	--------------

41. Look, if she goes to the shopping centre by bus, she'll be there in ten minutes.

**take**

Look, \_\_\_\_\_ ten minutes to go to the shopping centre by bus.

41	<b>it will take her</b>	41	<u>  0  </u>	<u>  1  </u>	<u>  2  </u>
----	-------------------------	----	--------------	--------------	--------------

42. They didn't let us feed the animals at the zoo.

**allowed**

We \_\_\_\_\_ the animals at the zoo.

42	<b>weren't allowed to feed</b>	42	<u>  0  </u>	<u>  1  </u>	<u>  2  </u>
----	--------------------------------	----	--------------	--------------	--------------



# Final ECCE Test

## Grammar

1. All applications for the job must \_\_\_\_\_ in by Friday.  
a. send  
b. have sent  
 c. be sent  
d. have been sent
2. Amy finally got \_\_\_\_\_ her money problems.  
a. out of  
b. around  
 c. over  
d. away
3. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ daughter was kidnapped lives next to me.  
a. who  
b. who's  
c. whom  
 d. whose
4. "Are you still going to the party on Friday?"  
"Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ something else comes up."  
 a. unless  
b. in case  
c. as long as  
d. supposing
5. He is really interested \_\_\_\_\_ studying art.  
a. of  
b. for  
c. about  
 d. in
6. Martha, I never knew you were \_\_\_\_\_ cook!  
a. a such good  
 b. such a good  
c. so good  
d. a so good
7. Do you mind walking me \_\_\_\_\_ my car?  
 a. to  
b. in  
c. at  
d. until
8. Mom, it's time you \_\_\_\_\_ that I'm not a little girl anymore.  
a. be realizing  
b. are realizing  
 c. realized  
d. will realize
9. "I'd really like to travel to Africa one day."  
"You \_\_\_\_\_ that for years. Why don't you just do it?"  
a. are saying  
b. were saying  
c. say  
 d. have been saying
10. She wondered why \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. was I crying  
b. I am crying  
 c. I was crying  
d. am I crying
11. How long \_\_\_\_\_ French?  
a. are you learning  
 b. have you been learning  
c. do you learn  
d. have you learned
12. "Is this restaurant always so busy?"  
"No. Rarely \_\_\_\_\_ so busy."  
a. this place being  
 b. is this place  
c. this place is  
d. does this place
13. Mike, it's March 1<sup>st</sup> —the rent is \_\_\_\_\_ today.  
a. due until  
b. due for  
c. due to  
 d. due
14. The new cinema is \_\_\_\_\_ Northern Ave.  
a. at  
 b. on  
c. under  
d. of



15. My parents are quite strict-they never let me \_\_\_\_\_ out late.  
 a. stay  
 b. to stay  
 c. staying  
 d. having stayed
16. "Where's Grandma?"  
 "She's in the garden \_\_\_\_\_ the plants."  
 a. watering  
 b. to watering  
 c. to water  
 d. for watering
17. John and Amy have a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ daughter.  
 a. two-years-old  
 b. two-year-olds  
 c. two-year-old  
 d. two-years-olds
18. The hotel is \_\_\_\_\_ close by, but quite cheap, too.  
 a. in addition  
 b. as well as  
 c. not only  
 d. also
19. I don't think there's \_\_\_\_\_ point in apologizing now.  
 a. little  
 b. such  
 c. very  
 d. any
20. Even though they live nearby, I \_\_\_\_\_ visit them.  
 a. not ever  
 b. hardly ever  
 c. hardly never  
 d. had never
21. It was \_\_\_\_\_ book that I couldn't put it down.  
 a. such interesting  
 b. so interesting  
 c. such an interesting  
 d. so interesting a
22. I'm really tired \_\_\_\_\_ you talking down to me.  
 a. of  
 b. in  
 c. at  
 d. for
23. "Did you paint the house by yourself?"  
 "No, I \_\_\_\_\_ professionally."  
 a. have done it  
 b. had done it  
 c. had it done  
 d. got done
24. \_\_\_\_\_ can use the pool. You don't have to be a member.  
 a. Anyone  
 b. Every  
 c. Someone  
 d. Each one
25. \_\_\_\_\_ who told me about the party on Saturday.  
 a. Alice  
 b. Alice was  
 c. She was Alice  
 d. It was Alice
26. Anne, I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ drive like a crazy person!  
 a. couldn't  
 b. wouldn't  
 c. could  
 d. mustn't
27. Robert \_\_\_\_\_ be in his room. He left an hour ago.  
 a. mustn't  
 b. can't  
 c. shouldn't  
 d. might not
28. I don't really know \_\_\_\_\_ that machine.  
 a. to operate  
 b. operating  
 c. how is operating  
 d. how to operate
29. \_\_\_\_\_ you follow the directions, you won't have any problem.  
 a. As soon as  
 b. As much as  
 c. As long as  
 d. As though



30. \_\_\_\_\_ not an easy language to learn.  
a. The Japanese  
b. The Japanese is  
c. Japanese are  
 d. Japanese is
31. Why don't you pay attention! You \_\_\_\_\_ things up!  
a. constantly messed  
 b. are constantly messing  
c. have constantly messed  
d. constantly messing
32. Maria decided to have her hair \_\_\_\_\_ blond.  
a. dye  
 b. dyed  
c. dying  
d. to dye
33. Hurry up! The plane \_\_\_\_\_ in one hour!  
 a. leaves  
b. had left  
c. would have left  
d. has left
34. Let's go to the movies tonight, \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. aren't we  
b. don't we  
c. won't we  
 d. shall we
35. Twenty minutes of exercise a day \_\_\_\_\_ stay in shape.  
 a. is all you need to  
b. that is need for  
c. which is in need of  
d. of which is needed to

---

## Vocabulary

36. My mother always seems \_\_\_\_\_ about my health.  
 a. concerned  
b. contained  
c. involved  
d. caring
37. This knife is too \_\_\_\_\_ for me to cut my steak.  
a. broad  
b. sharp  
c. round  
 d. blunt
38. \_\_\_\_\_ exams is always very stressful for me.  
a. Giving  
 b. Taking  
c. Making  
d. Setting
39. It's a police officer's job to \_\_\_\_\_ the law.  
a. ban  
 b. enforce  
c. keep  
d. obey
40. It's not in my best \_\_\_\_\_ to listen to everything he says.  
a. advice  
b. plan  
 c. interest  
d. wish
41. He took a \_\_\_\_\_ breath before he dove into the water.  
a. wide  
b. strong  
c. large  
 d. deep
42. The spaghetti you made looks \_\_\_\_\_ delicious!  
a. fully  
b. nicely  
 c. absolutely  
d. interestingly
43. He was disqualified and unable to \_\_\_\_\_ in the race.  
a. oppose  
b. complete  
 c. compete  
d. enter



44. Josh can't \_\_\_\_\_ be serious about moving to Africa.  
a. definitely  
b. fairly  
c. simply  
 d. possibly
45. There were several kidnapping \_\_\_\_\_ reported in the neighborhood.  
a. events  
 b. incidents  
c. tragedies  
d. news
46. I need you to \_\_\_\_\_ some cheese for the macaroni, please.  
a. chop  
 b. grate  
c. boil  
d. peel
47. Can you please keep an \_\_\_\_\_ on my son for a second?  
 a. eye  
b. arm  
c. alarm  
d. ear
48. An aspirin will definitely help \_\_\_\_\_ your headache.  
a. fight  
b. relax  
 c. relieve  
d. recover
49. I'm starting to feel like my boyfriend is taking me for \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. granted  
b. sure  
c. certain  
d. definite
50. Alice \_\_\_\_\_ to have met Johnny Depp in person.  
a. regards  
 b. claims  
c. says  
d. considers
51. She \_\_\_\_\_ that I go with her to the movies.  
a. assisted  
b. persisted  
 c. insisted  
d. resisted
52. I wasn't able to \_\_\_\_\_ that lecture on Sunday.  
a. enroll  
 b. attend  
c. advise  
d. accept
53. The crime \_\_\_\_\_ has risen drastically over the past few years.  
a. scene  
 b. rate  
c. measure  
d. percent
54. I knew my sister was in big \_\_\_\_\_ from the way my mom looked at her.  
a. problem  
b. difficulty  
 c. trouble  
d. shock
55. Can you please give me a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ with my shopping bags?  
a. lift  
b. ride  
 c. hand  
d. arm
56. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ what it must be like to be so poor.  
 a. imagine  
b. expect  
c. remember  
d. think
57. Many different kinds of food sold today have \_\_\_\_\_ flavouring added to them.  
a. fake  
b. wrong  
 c. artificial  
d. false



58. Anne \_\_\_\_\_ James a happy birthday at his party.  
a. told  
 b. wished  
c. offered  
d. wanted
59. The teacher told the students to \_\_\_\_\_ their hands before speaking.  
a. stretch  
b. apply  
 c. raise  
d. give
60. He had changed so much, I \_\_\_\_\_ recognized him.  
a. never  
 b. barely  
c. obviously  
d. virtually
61. I'm not really that \_\_\_\_\_ with the new software program.  
a. aware  
 b. familiar  
c. capable  
d. able
62. I'm afraid the concert will be \_\_\_\_\_ until further notice.  
 a. postponed  
b. cancelled  
c. held  
d. given
63. This room is so \_\_\_\_\_! Can we open a window?  
a. dirty  
b. chilly  
 c. stuffy  
d. misty
64. In an effort to \_\_\_\_\_ the ice, she tried telling a joke.  
a. crack  
 b. break  
c. melt  
d. crush
65. His table \_\_\_\_\_ are horrible! He eats like a pig!  
a. behaviours  
b. moods  
 c. manners  
d. actions
66. The reporter told the celebrity that the interview was off the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. plan  
b. file  
 c. record  
d. agenda
67. Her glasses broke when she \_\_\_\_\_ them on the floor.  
 a. dropped  
b. spilled  
c. collapsed  
d. removed
68. I asked my father if he could give me a \_\_\_\_\_ to the train station.  
a. drive  
b. travel  
c. pick  
 d. lift
69. She gave a \_\_\_\_\_ excuse for being late to work.  
a. risky  
b. invalid  
c. useless  
 d. lousy
70. Who's in \_\_\_\_\_ of this project?  
a. responsibility  
 b. charge  
c. head  
d. direction



# Dictionary

## A

**abbreviation** (n): a shortened word or phrase  
**abnormal** (adj): not normal  
**abolish** (v): formally put an end to sth  
**absent-minded** (adj): forgetful, not paying proper attention to sth  
**accommodation** (n): buildings or rooms where people stay  
**accompany** (v): go somewhere with sb  
**accomplish** (v): succeed in doing sth  
**accordingly** (adv): in agreement with sth, therefore  
**accounts** (n): detailed records of all the money received or spent  
**accountant** (n): sb whose job is to keep financial records  
**accumulate** (v): gather together in an increasing quantity, collect  
**accurate** (adj): precise, correct to a very detailed level  
**accustomed to sth** (adj): used to sth  
**ache** (n): physical pain or discomfort caused by injury or illness  
**achieve** (v): succeed in doing sth  
**acknowledge** (v): accept or admit that sth exists or is true  
**acquire** (v): get, gain possession of sth  
**actually** (adv): in fact  
**adaptable** (adj): adjustable, changeable  
**additive** (n): a substance added to food for colouring, flavouring or to make it last longer  
**adequate** (adj): enough, sufficient  
**admiration** (n): feeling of liking and respect for sb or sth  
**adopt** (v): start having a new attitude or plan  
**ads** (n): advertisements  
**advance** (n): progress, development  
**advisable** (adj): sensible, correct  
**affect** (v): influence, cause sb or sth to change in some way  
**affection** (n): liking or being fond of someone  
**allergic reaction** (n): becoming ill or getting a rash when you eat, smell or touch sth  
**alternative** (adj): other  
**alternative** (n): possibility of choice between two things  
**amateur** (n): sb who does sth as a hobby, not as a job  
**amazement** (n): surprise, astonishment  
**ambition** (n): wanting very much to do or achieve sth  
**amusement** (n): sth you find pleasant or funny (game, pastime etc.)  
**animal rights** (n): the belief that animals should not be exploited or abused by humans  
**animation** (n): films in which drawings

or puppets appear to move  
**anniversary** (n): the date on which sth special happened in some previous year  
**annual** (adj): once a year  
**anthem** (n): a formal song or religious hymn written for a special occasion  
**anticipate** (v): await sth, be prepared for sth to happen  
**apparently** (adv): clearly, obviously  
**appetiser** (n): food served at the beginning of a meal, starter  
**appetite** (n): desire to eat  
**applaud** (v): clap your hands to show approval  
**approach** (v): (1) get closer to sb/sth (2) deal with a task or problem  
**approval** (n): approving of sth, believing that it is acceptable  
**approve** (v): like, admire sb or sth  
**approximately** (adv): almost, nearly, roughly  
**arch** (n): a curved line  
**arrangement** (n): plan, preparation for sth  
**arrow** (n): a long thin weapon which is sharp and pointed at the end  
**artistic** (adj): good at drawing, painting etc.  
**ash** (n): what is left after sth has burnt  
**ashtray** (n): a small dish for cigarette ashes  
**assure** (v): make sb certain that sth will happen  
**astonish** (v): surprise very much  
**attack** (v): try to hurt or damage sb or sth using violence  
**attempt** (v): try, make an effort to do sth  
**attendance** (n): being present or regularly going to a place  
**attitude** (n): point of view, approach, opinion, behaviour  
**audience** (n): group of people watching or listening to a play, concert, film, etc.  
**autobiography** (n): an account of your life, which you write yourself  
**available** (adj): that can be found, obtained or used  
**await** (v): wait for sth, expect sth  
**award** (n): a prize  
**aware** (adj): knowing sth

## B

**balanced** (adj): having all its different parts in correct proportions  
**ban** (v): state officially that sth must not be done, shown or used  
**barely** (adv): hardly, only just, scarcely  
**barn** (n): a building on a farm where crops or animal food are kept  
**basement** (n): a floor of a building built below ground level  
**bazaar** (n): sale organised to raise

money for charity

**beforehand** (adj): in advance, earlier than sth else  
**bin** (n): a container for putting rubbish in  
**binding** (n): anything that wraps around sth  
**birthmark** (n): a mark on your body that you have since you were born  
**bit** (n): small piece  
**blame** (v): believe that sb or sth is responsible for sth bad  
**bleach** (n): a chemical used for whitening clothes and killing germs  
**bleed** (v): lose blood as a result of injury or illness  
**blood pressure** (n): the force at which blood flows around your body  
**bloom** (v): when the flower bud opens  
**board** (n): a group of people managing a company or organisation  
**bolt** (n): flash of lightning seen as a white line in the sky  
**bound** (adj): tied up securely  
**bravery** (n): brave behaviour, being brave  
**break out** (phr v): begin suddenly (war, fire, etc.)  
**breakthrough** (n): significant development or progress  
**breath** (n): the air you take into and let out of your lungs when you breathe  
**breathalyser** (n): a bag or electronic device used by the police to test whether a driver has drunk too much alcohol  
**breed** (v): when animals reproduce  
**bright** (adj): strong and noticeable, not dark  
**brilliant** (adj): very smart, intelligent  
**broadcast** (v): transmit on radio or television  
**broccoli** (n): a type of vegetable, green in colour  
**bump into** (phr v): meet or come across by chance  
**burden** (n): causing you a lot of difficulty or worry  
**by means of** (pp): by way of  
**by nature** (pp): having a characteristic or quality as part of your character

## C

**calcium** (n): a white mineral found in bones and teeth  
**calmly** (adv): quietly, peacefully  
**campaign** (n): planned set of activities carried out in order to achieve an aim  
**cancel** (v): prevent sth arranged from happening  
**candidate** (n): a person considered for a position or taking an examination  
**capsule** (n): a small container with a drug or other substance inside it, used



for medical or scientific purposes

**cardboard** (n): thick, stiff paper used for making boxes

**chick** (n): a baby bird

**conventional** (adj): ordinary, normal

**cardigan** (n): a woollen jumper which is open in the front and can be fastened with buttons

**carving** (n): an object which has been cut out of wood, stone, etc.

**cauliflower** (n): a type of vegetable, white in colour

**ceremony** (n): a formal event, usually religious

**chain** (n): rings (usually of metal) linked together in a line

**chairman** (n): a person in charge of a committee or organisation

**challenge** (v): invite sb to fight or compete with you in some way

**challenging** (adj): requiring great effort and determination

**chapel** (n): a small church

**charge** (v): ask sb to pay money for sth that they have bought or for a service

**charity** (n): an organisation which raises money to help people

**charm** (n): sth believed to have magic powers

**chase** (v): to run after sb in order to catch them

**cheer up** (phr v): become more cheerful

**chickenpox** (n): a disease that gives you high temperature and red itchy spots

**chop** (n): a slice of lamb or pork, usually including a rib

**circumstance** (n): situation, condition

**city-state** (n): ancient state consisting of a city and smaller towns dependent on it

**claim** (v): say that sth is true

**clarify** (v): make sth easier to understand

**clink** (v): make a light sharp ringing sound

**closet** (n): wardrobe

**coach** (n): trainer

**collapse** (v): fall down suddenly

**colloquial** (adj): informal speech

**combination** (n): a mixture of things or qualities

**combine** (v): join together, blend, mix

**comforting** (adj): making you feel less worried or unhappy

**command** (n): order

**comment** (v): express your opinion about sth or give an explanation for it

**commentary** (n): a description of an event broadcast on radio or television while the event is taking place

**commercial** (adj): related to buying or selling goods

**committee** (n): a group of people who meet to make decisions for the organisation they represent

**community** (n): all the people living in an area

**compete** (v): take part in a game, contest

or fight

**complete** (adj): containing all the parts sth should contain

**complexion** (n): the colour and general condition of a person's skin

**complicated** (adj): not simple

**compulsive** (adj): obsessive, not able to stop doing sth wrong or harmful

**concentrate** (v): focus your attention on sth, consider sth closely

**concern** (n): worrying about a situation

**conclude** (v): end sth, draw a conclusion about it

**conference** (n): a meeting at which formal discussions take place

**confide** (v): trust sb and tell them your secrets

**confirmation** (n): proof, knowing that sth is definite

**conflict** (n): serious disagreement or argument about sth important

**conformist** (adj): behaving or thinking like everybody else

**confront** (v): deal with sth, face

**conscious** (adj): awake, alert, aware of sth

**consciousness** (n): being awake or alert

**conservative** (adj): not willing to accept change

**constantly** (adv): always, continually

**construction** (n): building of houses, factories, roads etc.

**consult** (v): ask for specialised advice

**consume** (v): eat, drink or use up sth

**consumer** (n): a person who buys things or uses services

**contact** (v): get in touch with sb

**container** (n): anything that can be used for putting things into it (e.g. a box)

**content** (adj): fairly happy or satisfied

**content(s)** (n): anything that is inside of sth else

**contract** (n): legal agreement, usually involving money

**contrast** (n): clear difference between two or more things

**contribution** (n): a sum of money you give in order to help pay for sth

**convenient** (adj): easy, useful for a particular purpose

**converse** (v): talk to someone

**convince** (v): persuade, make sb believe sth

**co-ordination** (n): organising the activities of groups so that they work together efficiently

**corporation** (n): large business or company

**cosmetics** (n): substances (e.g. lipstick, powder) which people use on their face or body in order to look more attractive

**cottage** (n): a house in the country

**create** (v): invent, design or make sth new

**credit card** (n): a card which allows you to buy goods on credit

**crisps** (n): baked slices of potato sold in

packets

**criterion** (n): a standard by which sth can be judged

**criticise** (v): express disapproval of sth or say what is wrong with it

**crooked** (adj): bent, twisted

**crops** (n): plants (e.g. wheat, potatoes) grown in large quantities

**crowning** (n): placing a crown on one's head

**cube** (n): an object with six square surfaces which are all the same size

**culture** (n): civilisation, customs, life-style

**custard tart**: a sweet dessert

## D

**dare** (v): have enough courage to do sth

**dart** (n): a small narrow object with a sharp point which can be thrown or shot

**deal with** (phr. v): solve a problem or make a decision about a situation

**deceive** (v): make sb believe sth that is not true in order to gain sth yourself

**declare** (v): (1) state officially (2) say what goods you have bought from abroad in order to pay the right tax

**deduction** (n): drawing a conclusion about sth

**defeat** (v): beat your opponent in a battle, game or contest

**deficiency** (n): lack, shortage, not having enough of sth

**dehydrated** (adj): when the body doesn't have enough water

**delivery** (n): carrying sth to a destination

**demolish** (v): destroy a building completely

**demonstration** (n): a march or gathering in which people take part in order to show their opposition to or support for sth

**deodoriser** (n): sth that can hide or remove unpleasant smells

**depend on** (v): rely on

**deprive** (v): prevent sb from having or enjoying sth

**depth** (n): how deep sth is (downwards, backwards, or inwards)

**desperate** (adj): being in such a bad situation that you would try anything to change it

**detached house** (n): not joined to any other house

**determination** (n): not willing to change your mind about sth you have decided to do

**devastated** (adj): shocked and very upset by sth

**device** (n): a piece of machinery or a special tool used for a particular purpose

**diabetic** (n): a person who suffers from diabetes (having too much sugar in their blood)

**dialect** (n): a form of a language spoken in a particular area

**dictate** (v): say or read sth aloud, so that



others can write it down

**digest** (v): when the body processes the food we eat

**digital** (adj): systems recording or transmitting information in the form of thousands of very small signals

**dim** (adj): not bright, not easy to see

**dim** (v): make or become less bright

**direct** (v): control the production of a film

**dirt** (n): dust, mud or stain on sth

**disapprove of sth** (v): not like, not agree with or approve of sth

**disaster** (n): a terrible accident or misfortune

**discipline** (n): obeying laws or rules, working in a controlled way

**disconnected** (adj): not connected or joined, cut off

**discovery** (n): learning sth that was not known before

**disheartening** (adj): disappointing

**dissatisfaction** (n): not being satisfied or pleased with sth

**distant** (adj): far away in space or time

**distract** (v): draw sb's attention away from sth

**distress** (n): a state of extreme suffering or pain

**distribute** (v): hand out or deliver things to a number of people

**divorce** (n): a formal ending of a marriage by law

**downwards** (adv): towards the ground or a lower level

**drain** (v): remove any liquid from food, especially after it has been cooked

**drawback** (n): disadvantage

**drought** (n): long period of time during which no rain falls

**drown** (v): die in water due to lack of oxygen

## E

**earplugs** (n): small pieces of soft material which are put into your ear to protect you from noise or water

**earthquake** (n): shaking of the ground, usually causing destruction

**eating grounds** (n): fields where animals can feed

**eccentric** (adj): sb whose habits or opinions are different from those of most people

**economise** (v): save up

**effective** (adj): working well and producing the desired results

**effort** (n): trying hard to do sth

**election** (n): voting in order to choose a person or group of people for an official position

**elegant** (adj): stylish in appearance and graceful in movement

**eliminate** (v): remove sth completely, get rid of

**emblem** (n): a design that has been chosen as a symbol of a country or

organisation

**embroider** (v): sew a decorative design on a piece of cloth

**emergency** (n): an unexpected difficult or dangerous situation demanding immediate action

**emotion** (n): a person's feelings

**emperor** (n): a man who rules an empire

**enable** (v): make it possible for sb to do sth

**enchanting** (adj): causing feelings of delight or pleasure

**encounter** (v): come across, meet, experience

**engaged** (telephone line) (adj): busy, so that you cannot speak to the person you are trying to call

**engagement** (n): an arrangement that sb has made to do sth

**enthuse** (v): make sb feel excited or enthusiastic

**entire** (adj): whole, complete

**equip** (v): give sb or sth the tools or the skill they need for a particular purpose

**erode** (v): crack and break, becoming gradually destroyed

**escapologist** (n): sb who entertains audiences by escaping from difficult situations

**essay** (n): composition

**establish** (v): set up sth

**evacuate** (v): move people out of a place when in danger

**eventually** (adv): finally, in the end, after all

**evidence** (n): proof, anything that causes you to believe that sth is true

**excessive** (adj): more than necessary

**execution** (v): killing sb as a punishment for a serious crime

**exhausted** (v): tired either physically or mentally

**expedition** (n): an organised journey made for a specific purpose (e.g. exploration)

**extinction** (n): the death of all the remaining living members of a species

**extinguish** (v): put out a fire

**extraordinary** (adj): special, unusual

**extreme** (adj): great, maximum, very intense

**eye shadow** (n): make-up for the eyes

**eyelash** (n): hair growing on the upper and lower eyelids

**eyesight** (n): the ability to see

**eyewitness** (n): sb who was present at an event and can describe what happened

## F

**fabric** (n): cloth, material

**fade** (v): gradually become unnoticed or unimportant

**failure** (n): (1) lack of success in sth (2) when sth goes wrong or stops working

**fairness** (n): being reasonable, right and just

**familiarise** (v): learn about sth and start

to understand it

**fancy** (v): want to have or to do sth

**fascinated** (adj): charmed, finding sth very interesting and attractive

**feature-length film** (n): a full-length film about a fictional situation

**feeder** (n): a container filled with food for birds or animals

**fellow** (n): colleague, person with whom you have sth in common

**fence** (n): a wooden or metal barrier between two places

**filthy** (adj): very dirty

**financial** (adj): related to or involving money

**fire escape** (n): emergency exit from a building

**fireproof** (adj): sth that won't catch fire

**firewood** (n): wood cut into pieces so that it can be burned on a fire

**firmly** (adv): strongly

**first-aid kit** (n): a box containing anything that can be used in medical emergencies

**fit** (v): install

**fix** (v): repair, mend

**flavour** (n): the taste of a food or drink

**flee** (v): escape, run away from sb or sth

**flight attendant** (n): member of the crew of an aeroplane, whose job is to look after the passengers

**float** (v): lie above or just below the surface of a liquid

**flood** (n): an overflow of water, usually due to heavy rains

**floorboards** (n): pieces of timber used to cover floors

**floss** (n): soft, very thin pieces of thread used for cleaning between the teeth

**fluent** (adj): speaking a language easily and correctly

**flute** (n): a musical instrument

**footstep** (n): the sound of sb walking each time their foot touches the ground

**foreman** (n): an experienced person who supervises other workers

**fortunate** (adj): lucky

**fortune** (n): luck, what will happen to you in the future

**foundation** (n): an organisation set up for a particular purpose

**founder** (n): the person who started an institution or organisation

**frame** (n): a structure that gives shape and support to sth

**frustrate** (v): upset, make sb angry

**full-length** (adj): having the complete length

**function** (v): work, operate

**fund** (n): amount of money collected or saved for a particular purpose

**furthermore** (adv): moreover, additionally

**fussy** (adj): very concerned with unimportant details



## G

**garbage** (n): rubbish, especially waste from a kitchen

**garlic** (n): small round white bulb of a plant like an onion, with a very strong taste and smell

**gather** (v): come together in a group

**generate** (v): cause sth to begin and develop

**genuine** (adj): original, authentic, real

**global** (adj): sth that happens in all parts of the world

**glove** (n): piece of clothing which covers your hands and wrists

**go off** (phr v): (1) make a sudden loud noise (2) become stale, sour or rotten (food, drink, etc.)

**gold-tipped** (adj): the pointed end of sth which is covered in gold

**goose** (n): a large bird like a duck

**gossip** (n): informal conversation, often about other people's private affairs

**goulash** (n): a traditional Hungarian dish

**gradual** (adj): occurring in small stages over a long period of time

**graduate** (n): sb who has been awarded a degree at university or college

**grotesque** (adj): unnatural, unpleasant or out of proportion

**guarantee** (v): make certain sth will happen

**guidance** (n): help and advice, especially sb older or more experienced than you

**guilty** (adj): unhappy because you have done or think you have done sth wrong or bad

**gums** (n): firm pink flesh inside the mouth, out of which the teeth grow

## H

**habitual** (adj): sth done usually or often, typical, characteristic

**handicapped** (adj): having a physical or mental disability

**handlebar** (n): upper front part of a bicycle for holding and steering

**hang around** (phr v): spend time somewhere or with sb

**harbour** (n): area of the sea at the coast, partly enclosed by land or strong walls and safe for boats

**harm** (v): cause physical injury to sb, usually on purpose

**harmless** (adj): not dangerous, safe

**haste** (v): act quickly

**hatch** (v): when an animal comes out of its egg by breaking the shell

**heater** (n): a device used to keep sb or an area warm

**herb** (n): a plant whose leaves are used in cooking to add flavour

**herd** (n): a group of animals of one kind that live together

**hesitate** (v): pause slightly while doing or saying sth because you are uncertain or worried about it

**hibernate** (v): spend the winter in a state

of deep sleep

**hideout** (n): a place where sb hides from the police or the authorities

**high-pitched** (adj): a high tone of voice

**hospitality** (n): friendly welcoming behaviour towards guests or strangers

**huddle** (v): a number of animals or people sitting or lying close to each other

**hurricane** (n): an extremely violent wind or storm

**hyperactive** (adj): very active, overactive

## I

**ideal** (adj): perfect

**identify** (v): recognise, distinguish

**ignore** (v): pay no attention to sb or sth

**illegally** (adv): against the law

**illiterate** (n): sb who can't read or write

**impatient** (adj): not patient

**imply** (v): indicate or say sth indirectly, hint at sth

**impolite** (adj): not polite

**import** (v): buy products or raw materials from another country for use in your own country

**impose** (v): use your authority to force people to accept sth

**impression** (n): what you think of sb or sth

**impressive** (adj): exciting, amazing

**improbable** (adj): unlikely to be true or to happen

**in accordance** (pp): according to

**in progress** (pp): still going on

**incident** (n): an event, occurrence, sth that happens

**include** (v): make sb or sth a part of a larger whole

**inconsiderate** (adj): not caring how your words or actions will affect other people, thoughtless

**inconvenient** (adj): causing problems or difficulties

**increase** (v): become greater in the number, level or amount

**indeed** (adv): in fact

**indicate** (v): point out, show, suggest, imply

**indigestion** (n): when the stomach cannot process the food easily

**independence** (n): when a country has its own government and is not ruled by another country

**individual** (adj): relating to one particular person, rather than to a large group

**industrial** (adj): related to or used in industry (factories)

**inherit** (v): receive money or property from sb who has died

**initially** (adv): at the beginning

**insect repellent** (n): a product that can be sprayed in the air or on the body to keep insects away

**insistence** (n): strong wish to do sth and refusing to give in

**install** (v): fit a piece of equipment somewhere so that it is ready to be used

**instructor** (n): sb who teaches a skill such as driving or skiing

**instrument** (n): a tool or device used for doing a particular task

**insufficient** (adj): not enough

**insurance company** (n): a company into which people pay money so that if anything happens to them, the company pays them out

**insure** (v): pay money to an insurance company

**intelligence** (n): the ability to understand, think and learn quickly

**intend** (v): decide or plan to do sth

**intermission** (n): short interval between two parts of film, play, concert, etc.

**interrupt** (v): stop an activity for a period of time

**intruder** (n): sb who goes into a place where they are not supposed to be

**involve** (v): contain, include

**irrational** (adj): not logical

**irresponsible** (adj): not responsible, careless

**irritation** (n): a feeling of annoyance, especially for sth that you cannot easily stop or control

**isolate** (v): separate from other people physically or socially

**issue** (n): topic, theme

## J

**judge** (v): form an opinion about sb or sth, evaluate, assess

**jumper** (n): a pullover, usually a woollen sweater

**junction** (n): where roads or railway lines meet and cross

**justice** (n): fairness in the way people are treated

## K

**kennel** (n): a small wooden house for a dog to live in

**kid yourself** (v): believe sth that is not true

**knit** (v): make sth from wool by using two knitting needles or machine

**knot** (n): tying a string or rope upon itself

## L

**laboratory** (n): a place where scientific research is carried out

**launch** (v): start a campaign, etc.

**law** (n): system of rules developed by a society or government in order to deal with crime, business agreements or social relationships

**layer** (n): a flat strip of a material

**lead** (n): a soft, grey metal (used in pencils)

**leak** (n): a hole through which liquid or gas can pass

**leakage** (n): when liquid or gas escapes



from a pipe or container due to a hole or other fault

**lean** (v): bend your body in a particular direction

**lecture** (n): a talk given in order to teach people about a particular subject

**legible** (adj): clear and easy to read

**lightning** (n): a bright flash of light in the sky during a thunderstorm

**limit** (v): restrict

**liquid** (n): a substance that flows (not solid or gas)

**literate** (adj): able to read and write

**litter** (v): throw rubbish on the ground

**loathing** (n): great dislike and disgust

**locate** (v): find out where sb or sth is

**loop** (n): curved or circular shape

**louse** (n): small insect living on the bodies of people or animals and bites to feed off their blood

**loyal** (adj): faithful

**lunar** (adj): related to the moon

**lungs** (n): two organs inside our chest used for breathing

## M

**magistrate** (n): an official acting as a judge in law courts which deal with minor crimes or disputes

**mainly** (adv): primarily, mostly

**maintain** (v): keep at the same rate or level

**malaria** (n): a serious disease carried by mosquitoes

**malnourished** (adj): not fed properly

**mammal** (n): species whose females give birth to babies, not eggs

**mango** (n): a tropical fruit

**manufacturer** (n): a person or organisation which produces goods in large quantities

**manipulate** (v): skilfully persuade people to do what you want

**manlike** (n): having characteristics similar to human

**manoeuvre** (n): movement from one position to another

**margarine** (n): a yellow spread used instead of oil or butter

**master** (n): sb with authority over a servant or slave

**masterpiece** (n): an extremely good work of art

**measles** (n): infectious illness that causes high temperature and red spots

**measure** (n): action carried out by the authorities in order to achieve a particular result

**measurement** (n): the process of measuring an amount or size

**medical** (adj): related to medicine

**medication** (n): pharmaceutical products used to treat an illness or disease

**meditation** (n): remaining silent and calm, thinking about sth carefully and deeply for a long time

**medium** (adj): average, midway between

extremes

**military service** (n): service in a country's armed forces

**mineral** (n): a substance naturally formed in rocks and in the earth, and also found in small quantities in food and drink

**minimise** (v): reduce sth to the lowest possible level or prevent it from increasing beyond that level

**misfortune** (n): sth unpleasant or unlucky

**mislead** (v): give sb a wrong idea about sth

**mist** (n): thin fog

**mole** (n): dark spot on the skin

**moral** (adj): behaving in a way that you think is right, proper or acceptable

**mould** (v): form into sth

**mountaineering** (n): climbing the steep sides of a mountain

**mud** (n): a sticky mixture of soil and water

**mugging** (n): attacking sb in order to steal their money

## N

**narrative** (n): a story or account of a series of events

**nation** (n): the people of a country

**neat** (adj): organised, clean, tidy

**neglect** (v): fail to look after sth properly

**networks** (n): companies that broadcast radio or television programmes

**nickname** (n): an informal name

**nomadic** (adj): travelling from place to place rather than living somewhere permanently

**nonsense** (n): anything silly or that does not make sense

**noodle** (n): ribbon-like strip of pasta

**noticeable** (adj): obvious

**nuclear testing** (n): the testing of nuclear power

**nuclear weapon** (n): weapon that uses nuclear energy

**nutrition** (n): taking food into the body and absorbing the substances that are necessary for staying healthy

## O

**observe** (v): keep an eye on sth, watch it carefully

**obvious** (adj): easy to see or understand

**occasion** (n): the time when sth happens, instance of sth happening

**occupy** (v): have, hold or use sth

**occur** (v): happen, take place

**omit** (v): leave out

**on a daily basis** (pp): done every day

**on the edge of your seat** : very interested or excited, waiting to see what will happen

**onwards** (adv): moving forward, continuing

**operate** (v): work, use

**operation** (n): surgery

**opportunity** (n): a situation in which it is possible to do sth, chance

**opposing** (adj): not the same, completely different

**optional** (adj): sth you can choose whether you will do it or not, not compulsory

**ordinary** (adj): normal, not special or unusual

**origin** (n): the beginning of sth

**outcome** (v): the result of an action or situation

**outer space** (n): the area outside the earth's atmosphere where other planets are

**overalls** (n): piece of clothing covering the whole body

**overcome** (v): deal with a problem or a feeling successfully, control it

**overestimate** (v): estimate sth too highly

**overnight** (adv): immediately, suddenly

**overseas** (adv): abroad, to or from another country

**overtime** (n): time you spend doing your job in addition to your normal working hours

**overweight** (adj): weighing more than is considered healthy

**ownership** (n): owning sth

**ozone layer** (n): part of the earth's atmosphere that protects us from harmful radiation

## P

**paintbrush** (n): a brush used for painting

**parade** (n): a procession of people or vehicles moving through a public place in order to celebrate an important day or event

**parsley** (n): a small plant with curly leaves used for flavouring or decorating food

**passer-by** (n): a person walking past sb or sth

**patient** (n): sb receiving medical treatment from a doctor or hospital

**pattern** (n): repeated or regular way in which sth happens or is done

**peak** (n): the highest level of sth

**peel** (v): remove the skin of a fruit or a vegetable

**perception** (n): understanding things through the senses

**perform** (v): carry out an action, especially a complicated task

**permit** (v): allow sb to do sth or sth to happen

**persistence** (n): continuing to do sth despite the difficulties

**persuasive** (adj): capable of making sb believe or do sth

**pessimist** (n): sb who thinks bad things are going to happen

**pick up** (phr v): collect

**picturesque** (adj): attractive, interesting and unspoiled place



**pierce** (v): make holes through sth  
**pillow** (n): a rectangular cushion for resting your head when you sleep  
**pine** (n): a type of wood, light in colour  
**pipeline** (n): a large pipe used for carrying oil or gas over a long distance, often underground  
**pitch** (v): put up a tent  
**pity** (n): feeling very sorry for sb  
**plaque** (n): sth that forms on the surface of the teeth and causes gum disease  
**plaster** (n): material that is put on broken legs or arms in order to allow the broken bone to mend  
**pluck** (v): pull the strings of a musical instrument with your fingers  
**polar** (adj): related to the earth's poles  
**policy** (n): a set of ideas or plans used as a basis for decisions in politics, economics or business  
**polish** (v): make sth shine  
**possess** (v): have or own sth  
**possession** (n): anything that you own, that belongs to you  
**post** (v): mail  
**postpone** (v): delay, put off  
**pouch** (n): a pocket of skin on an animal's stomach in which its baby grows (e.g. a kangaroo)  
**practice** (n): (1) the work a professional does (2) anything done regularly  
**precaution** (n): action taken to avoid a dangerous or undesirable event  
**precede** (v): be in front of sb or sth  
**precisely** (adv): exactly  
**predict** (v): say that sth will happen in the future  
**preheat** (v): heat up in advance (e.g. an oven)  
**pretend** (v): act in a way that could make people believe that sth is true although it isn't  
**pride** (n): feeling of satisfaction because you have done sth good or well  
**priority** (n): the most important thing that must be done or dealt with  
**private** (adj): for one person or small group, not for the general public  
**process** (n): a way of doing sth  
**prohibit** (v): forbid or make sth illegal, ban  
**promote** (v): give sb a more important job in the organisation they work for  
**promotion** (n): when you are given more important things to do in your job and earn more money  
**proper** (adj): appropriate, correct, suitable  
**properly** (adv): correctly, satisfactorily, appropriately  
**property** (n): (1) anything that belongs to sb (2) a building and the land belonging to it  
**protest** (n)/(v): say or show publicly that you object to sth  
**publicity sheet** (n): a sheet of paper advertising certain products

**publish** (v): print numerous copies of a book or magazine

## Q

**qualifications** (n): the qualities and skills necessary for doing a task  
**quantity** (n): an amount of sth  
**quarrel** (n): a disagreement, argument  
**queue** (n): a line of people, cars, etc. waiting for sth  
**quit** (v): stop doing sth, give up

## R

**race** (n): a group of people of common ancestry  
**rainfall** (n): the amount of rain that falls during a particular period  
**raise** (n): an increase in sb's wages or salary  
**raise** (v): (1) bring up a child (2) collect (money, etc.)  
**ransom** (n): money demanded by a kidnapper in order to set free a person they have kidnapped  
**rate** (n): the degree or extent to which sth happens  
**reasonable** (adj): quite good, fair, sensible  
**recognise** (v): know who a person is or what sth looks like  
**recommend** (v): advise, suggest sth as the best choice  
**reconnect** (v): connect again  
**reconsider** (v): think about sth again and see if it needs changing  
**recover** (v): regain health after being ill  
**rectangular** (adj): a shape with two pairs of equal, parallel sides  
**referee** (n): an official who controls a sports match  
**refreshment stand** (n): a small shop or stall with an open front selling soft drinks  
**refuel** (v): to fill the petrol tank with more fuel  
**refugee** (n): sb who has been forced to leave their country due to a war or because of their political or religious beliefs  
**regardless of** (adj): not affected or influenced by sth, not taking sth into consideration  
**regards** (n): greetings, friendly feelings towards someone  
**region** (n): large area of land  
**regret** (v): feel sad or disappointed because of sth that happened  
**regulation** (n): rule controlling people's behaviour or the way sth is done  
**reject** (v): (1) not accept sth (2) not agree with sb  
**release** (v): make sth available for sale or public showing  
**reliable** (adj): sb or sth that can be trusted to work well or behave in a desirable way  
**relief** (n): feeling glad because sth

unpleasant has not happened or is no longer happening

**relieve** (v): make sth less unpleasant, cause sth unpleasant to disappear  
**rely on** (v): depend on sb or sth  
**remain** (v): stay in a particular place or condition  
**remove** (v): take sth away from where it is  
**renovate** (v): restore a building to good condition  
**replace** (v): take the place of sth  
**represent** (v): act on behalf of sb or sth  
**representative** (n): sb who acts on behalf of another person or a group of people  
**require** (v): need, demand  
**resent** (v): feel bitter and angry about sb or sth  
**reserved** (adj): not expressing your feelings  
**resign** (v): formally announce that you are leaving a job or position  
**resort** (n): a place where many people go for holidays  
**response** (n): reply, reaction, answer  
**responsibility** (n): duties that you have because of your job or position  
**restless** (adj): impatient, finding it difficult to keep still  
**restore** (v): return sth to its original condition  
**restrict** (v): prevent sb from acting freely  
**restriction** (n): sth that limits what you can do  
**restrictive** (adj): preventing you from doing sth  
**reverse** (adj): the opposite to sth  
**review** (n): report or talk expressing your opinion on sth  
**revival** (n): becoming active or popular again  
**revolution** (n): an attempt by a group of people to change the political system of their country by force  
**revolve** (v): move in a circle around a central point or line  
**robe** (n): a loose piece of clothing which covers all your body and goes down to your toes  
**roll** (v): move along a surface turning over many times  
**roller-coaster** (n): a small railway that goes up and down steep slopes and people ride for pleasure and excitement  
**roots** (n): sb's background, the place or culture that sb or their family comes from  
**rough** (adj): violent, harsh  
**route** (n): the way from one place to another  
**row** (n): a line of people or things  
**rubber** (n): strong waterproof elastic substance  
**ruin** (v): damage, spoil, harm  
**runner-up** (n): sb who has finished in second place of a race or competition



**rush** (v): go somewhere quickly  
**ruthless** (adj): cruel, willing to do anything that is necessary to achieve sth

## S

**sacred** (adj): holy, believed to have a special connection with God  
**safeguard** (v): protect sb or sth from being harmed, lost or badly treated  
**sale** (n): the quantity of products sold  
**salmon** (n): a soft fish with pink flesh found in the Pacific and Atlantic oceans  
**sample** (n): a small quantity of a product showing you what it is like  
**scales** (n): machine or device used for weighing people or things  
**scarcely** (adv): barely, only just, rarely  
**schedule** (v): arrange sth to happen at a particular time  
**science-fiction** (n): fiction about events taking place in the future or in another part of the universe  
**scratch** (v): mark or cut the surface of sth with a rough or sharp instrument  
**screen** (n): a flat surface on which pictures or words are shown  
**seabed** (n): the ground at the bottom of the sea  
**seat belt** (n): a strap that you fasten across your body while sitting in a car or plane for safety  
**seek** (v): try to find  
**seldom** (adv): rarely  
**select** (v): choose  
**self-confidence** (n): being confident and sure of yourself  
**selfish** (adj): caring only about yourself, not about other people  
**send off** (phr v): send sth by post  
**sense** (v): become aware of sth  
**sequence** (n): a series of things or events occurring one after another in a particular order  
**session** (n): a period during which sth takes place (eg. an official meeting or other activity)  
**shallow** (adj): not deep  
**shape** (n): figure or outline of sth  
**sheet** (n): a rectangular piece of paper  
**shelter** (n): small building or covered place which will protect people from bad weather or bomb attacks  
**shepherd** (n): sb who looks after sheep  
**shoelace** (n): a string that ties up a shoe  
**shore** (n): the land along the edge of a river, sea or lake  
**Siamese twins** (n): twin babies born joined together at some point of their body  
**sickening** (adj): making you feel sick  
**side effects** (n): the harmful effects of a drug or medicine  
**sigh** (v): let out a deep breath, expressing disappointment or tiredness  
**sightsee** (v): visit places that are of interest to tourists

**significance** (n): importance  
**significant** (adj): very important  
**signify** (v): mean, represent sth  
**site** (n): place  
**sketching** (n): quick drawing without much detail  
**skilful, skillful** (adj): doing sth very well  
**skill** (n): knowledge and capability enabling you to do sth well  
**skull and crossbones** (n): a picture of a human skull over a pair of crossed bones, used to indicate death or danger  
**sky-diving** (n): jumping out of an aeroplane and falling through the air using a parachute  
**slant** (v): lean to the left or to the right  
**sleeves** (n): parts of clothing covering your arms  
**sliding door** (n): a type of door which opens and closes by sliding left or right  
**slight** (adj): being very small in degree or quantity  
**slippery** (adj): sth difficult to walk on because it is wet, smooth or greasy  
**slot** (n): a narrow opening in a machine or container in which coins can be inserted  
**(at a) snail's pace** (pp): very slowly  
**social worker** (n): sb whose job is to give help and advice to people who have serious problems  
**solid** (adj): very hard or firm  
**sore** (adj): causing you pain and discomfort  
**source** (n): the place where sth begins  
**spacious** (adj): large in size, with lots of room  
**spectacular** (adj): impressive, breathtaking, fantastic  
**speech** (n): a formal talk which sb gives to an audience  
**spice** (n): powder or seeds from particular plants, which are put in food to give it flavour  
**spicy** (adj): food strongly flavoured with spices  
**spike** (n): a long piece of metal with a sharp point  
**spiritual** (adj): related to people's deepest thoughts and beliefs  
**split up** (phr v): separate  
**spread** (v): affect a large area or many people  
**spy** (n): sb who obtains secret information about another country or organisation  
**squeeze** (v): get the juice out of a fruit or vegetable by pressing it  
**stable** (n): a building on a farm where animals are kept  
**stage** (n): a step of development  
**stain** (n): a mark which is difficult or impossible to remove by washing  
**staircase** (n): a set of stairs inside a building  
**stake** (n): pointed wooden post

**standard** (n): sth used in order to judge the quality of sth else  
**starch** (n): a carbohydrate found in bread, pasta, potatoes, etc.  
**stare** (v): look at sb or sth for a long time, often rudely or impolitely  
**startle** (v): surprise and frighten slightly  
**starve** (v): suffer greatly from lack of food  
**state** (v): say or write sth in a formal or definite way  
**status** (n): social or professional position  
**steam** (n): hot mist that forms when water boils  
**steel** (n): a very strong metal made from iron  
**sting** (v): when an insect or a plant pricks you and causes you a sharp pain  
**stock** (n): a supply of sth  
**store** (v): keep things somewhere in order to use them when they are needed  
**storm** (n): a lot of rain and high winds  
**strain** (n): intense physical or mental effort  
**strategy** (n): a general plan in order to achieve sth  
**street directory** (n): a book containing maps of the streets of a city  
**strengthen** (v): make sth stronger  
**strict** (adj): severe, sth that must be obeyed  
**structure** (n): the way sth is built or made  
**stuck** (adj): unable to move although you want to get away from a place or situation  
**substantially** (adv): significantly, greatly  
**substitute** (v): take the place of sth else  
**subway** (n): underground railway  
**suitable** (adj): right or appropriate for a job or position  
**suntan lotion**: a cream you put on your skin when sunbathing  
**superficial** (adj): related to the surface or the most obvious features of sth  
**superior** (adj): much better than sb or sth else  
**supernatural** (adj): beyond what is considered normal or natural  
**superstition** (n): believing in magic or things that are not real or possible  
**supplement** (n): a pill containing nutritious elements, taken in order to improve your health or diet  
**supplies** (n): food and equipment necessary for sth  
**surface** (n): the flat top part of sth  
**surrender** (v): not resist or give up the effort to win  
**surround** (v): be all around sth  
**survey** (n): trying to find out information about a group of people by asking a series of questions  
**survivor** (n): sb who continues to live after a disaster, accident or illness



**sweat** (n): liquid which comes through the skin when you are hot, ill or afraid

## T

**tactfully** (adv): taking care not to say or do sth that would hurt other people's feelings

**tactic** (n): a method used in order to achieve sth

**take turns** (v): when two people do sth one after the other

**talkative** (adj): talking a lot

**tap** (n): a device that controls the flow of a liquid coming from a pipe

**t-bar** (n): the top of the letter T

**tear** (v): rip or cut sth

**telephone directory** (n): a book listing people's names, addresses and phone numbers in alphabetical order

**terrify** (v): scare, frighten

**testify** (v): give a statement about sth in court

**thicken** (v): become more solid

**threaten** (v): say that you will do sth to sb in order to make them do sth you want

**thrill** (n): great excitement, pleasure or fear

**throughout** (prep): from the beginning till the end

**thunder** (n): a loud noise from the sky coming after a flash of lightning

**to a certain extent**: up to a certain point

**tolerate** (v): put up with sth, accept it although you don't like it

**tool** (n): a useful instrument or piece of equipment

**topple over** (phr v): fall over, collapse

**totally** (adv): completely

**track** (n): the rails along which a train travels

**train** (v): learn different skills in order to do sth

**transfer** (v): cause sb/sth to move to a different place

**transport** (n): means of travelling

**trapped** (adj): unable to escape or move

**trigger off** (phr v): cause sth to happen

**trillion** (n): a number with twelve zeros

**troublesome** (adj): causing trouble

**trustworthy** (adj): very reliable and responsible

**tube** (n): a long hollow object like a pipe

**tulip** (n): a kind of bell-shaped flower

**tuna** (n): large fish living in warm seas and caught for food

**twist** (v): injure your ankle or wrist by turning it too sharply

**tyre** (n): a thick piece of rubber fitted onto the wheels of vehicles

## U

**unattended** (adj): unwatched, left alone, abandoned

**unaware** (adj): having no knowledge of sth

**unbearably** (adv): in a very unpleasant,

painful or upsetting way

**unbelievable** (adj): very good, impressive, extreme, sth that you cannot believe

**uncertainty** (n): doubt, not being sure about what to do

**unconscious** (adj): having lost consciousness, unaware of what is going on

**underqualified** (adj): not qualified enough

**underwater link** (n): connection between two places beneath the water

**unexpected** (adj): sth surprising because you don't expect it to happen

**universe** (n): all the stars and planets

**unleaded fuel** (n): petrol containing less lead in order to protect the environment

**unlikely** (adj): not very probable to happen

**unrestrained** (adj): out of control

**unsteady** (adj): not steady, shaky

**up to date** (i): the newest thing of its kind, valid

**upward** (adj): moving towards a higher point or level

**urge** (v): try hard to persuade someone to do sth

**utensil** (n): anything used to cook with

**utterly** (adv): completely, absolutely

## V

**vacation** (n): holiday

**vaccinate** (v): give sb an injection in order to prevent them from falling ill

**vaccine** (n): an injection that prevents people from getting a disease

**vacuum** (v): clean sth with a vacuum cleaner

**value** (n): how important or useful sth is

**values** (n): moral principles and beliefs, ethics

**variety** (n): different types of sth

**vehicle** (n): a car, bus, train etc.

**vet** (n): a doctor for animals

**via** (adv): going through a place

**victim** (n): sb who has been hurt or killed

**victorious** (adj): having won a war, struggle or competition

**violent** (adj): using physical force or weapons with the intention to do harm

**virus** (n): a kind of germ that can cause diseases

**voluntary** (adj): sth done or performed willingly

## W

**wage** (n): payment in return for work or services

**warehouse** (n): a large building where goods are stored

**warning** (n): anything informing people of a possible danger, problem or sth unpleasant

**warrior** (n): a fighter or soldier

(especially in past times)

**wax** (v): polish a surface by spreading a thin layer of wax on it

**weapon** (n): a gun, knife or other object used for killing or hurting people or animals

**well-behaved** (adj): with good manners

**wet** (v): get water or some other liquid over sth

**whatsoever** (adv): at all

**wheat** (n): cereal crop grown for food

**whereabouts** (n): the location of sth

**white lie** (n): minor or unimportant lie

**willing** (adj): wanting, not mind doing sth

**willingness** (n): desire, strong wish to do sth

**wipe** (v): clean up with a cloth

**wise** (adj): clever, sensible, reasonable

**witchcraft** (n): use of magic powers, especially evil ones

**withdraw** (v): remove, take sth away

**witness** (v): see sth happen

**woodshed** (n): small building where firewood or garden tools are stored

**worldwide** (adv): all over the world

**worthwhile** (adj): worth the time, money or effort spent on it, enjoyable, useful

## Y

**yeast** (n): a substance which makes bread rise



# Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns with Prepositions

## A

account for  
accuse of  
agree on sth  
(dis)agree with sb  
aim at  
apologise to sb for sth  
apply to sb for sth  
(dis)approve of  
argue with sb about sth  
arrest sb for sth  
arrive in/at  
ask for  
assure (sb) of  
  
absent from  
accustomed to  
addicted to  
afraid of  
allergic to  
amazed at/by  
angry at what sb does  
angry with sb about sth  
annoyed with sb about sth  
anxious about  
ashamed of  
attached to  
(un)aware of  
  
(dis)advantage of  
advice on  
(in) answer to  
attack on

## B

beg for  
begin with  
believe in  
belong to  
benefit from  
beware of  
blame sb for sth  
boast about/of  
  
bad at  
bored by/with  
bound with  
brilliant at  
busy with  
  
(put the) blame on sb

## C

care about/for  
change into  
collide with  
come from  
comment on  
compare with/to  
complain to sb about/of  
concentrate on

congratulate sb on sth  
connect to/with  
consist of  
contrast with  
cope with  
crash into  
criticise sb for

(in)capable of  
careful of  
careless about  
certain about/of  
charged with/for  
clever at  
close to sb/sth  
combined with  
conscious of  
content with  
covered in/with  
crazy about  
crowded with  
cruel to  
curious about

(take) care of  
cheque for  
comparison between  
confidence in sb  
connection between  
contact between  
cruelty to/towards  
cure for

## D

date back to  
deal with  
decide on  
dedicate to  
demand from  
depart from  
depend on  
describe sb/sth to sb  
die in (an accident)  
die of/from  
differ from  
dismiss from  
distinguish between  
divide between/among  
divide into  
do sth about  
dream about/of

delighted with  
dependent on  
different from/of  
disappointed in/by/about/with  
discouraged from  
disgusted by/at  
disqualified from  
dressed in

delay in

demand for  
departure from  
description of  
difference between/of  
difficulty in/with  
discussion about/on  
distance of  
doubt about

## E

enter into  
escape from  
excuse sb for sth  
experiment on/with  
  
eager for  
efficient at  
engaged to sb/in sth  
equal to  
excellent at  
excited about  
experienced in

(put) effort into sth  
engagement to sb  
example of  
exception to  
excuse for  
expert at/in/on

## F

fail in an attempt  
fail to do sth  
fight with  
fill sth with sth else  
finish with  
forget about  
forgive for

faithful to  
familiar to sb  
familiar with  
famous for  
fed up with  
fond of  
frightened of  
full of  
furious with sb about/at sth

failure in/to

## G

glance at  
  
good at  
grateful to sb for sth  
guilty of  
  
generosity to/towards

## H

happen to



hear about/from/of  
hope to do sth/for

handy for  
happy with/about  
harmful to  
hopeless at

(no) hope of

**I**  
include in  
inform of  
insist on  
invest in  
involve in

identical to  
ill with  
impressed by/with  
independent of  
inferior to  
informed about  
interested in

idea of  
impression on sb  
information about  
(have no) intention of  
invitation to

**J**  
join in  
joke about

jealous of

**K**  
knock at/on  
know of/about

keen on  
keen to do sth

knowledge of

**L**  
laugh at  
leave for  
lend to  
lie to/about  
listen to  
live on  
look for

locked in

lack of

**M**  
mention to  
mistake sb for  
mix with

married to  
mean to

marriage to

**N**  
nervous about

need for

**O**  
object to

obliged to sb for sth

objection to  
opinion of/on  
opposite of/to

**P**  
pay for  
praise sb for sth  
prefer to  
prepare for  
prevent from  
protect against/from  
provide sb with  
punish for  
put oneself through

patient with  
pleasant to  
pleased with  
polite to  
popular with  
proud of  
puzzled by/at

pity for  
preference for

**Q**  
quarrel with sb about sth

qualified for

quarrel about

**R**  
react to  
receive from  
recover from  
refer to  
regard as  
relieve oneself of  
rely on  
remind sb of/about sth  
replace sth with sth else  
result from/in

related to  
responsible for

reaction to  
reason for  
(have a good/bad) relationship with  
reply to  
reputation for/of

responsibility for  
(make) room for

**S**  
save sb from  
search for  
separate from  
shout at  
smile at/to  
spend money/time on/in  
stare at  
succeed in  
suffer from  
suspect sb of  
sympathise with

safe from  
same as  
(dis)satisfied with/by  
scared of  
sensitive to  
serious about  
shocked by/at  
short of  
shy of  
similar to  
skillful/skilled at  
(feel/be) sorry about/for  
superior to  
surprised by/at  
suspicious of  
sympathetic to/towards

smell of  
solution to

**T**  
thank for  
think of/about  
throw at/to  
translate from/into

terrified of  
thankful for  
tired of  
talent for sth

(have/be in) trouble with

**U**  
upset about/by

(make) use of

**W**  
warn sb about/of/against  
waste time/money on  
worry about  
write to sb

worried about



# Prepositional Phrases

---

## Ahead

ahead of one's time  
ahead of schedule

## At

at the age of  
at the airport  
at the beginning (of)  
at the bottom of  
at breakfast/lunch/dinner  
at the bus stop  
at the corner  
at dawn  
at one's desk  
at the door  
at the end (of)  
at first

at first sight  
at a glance  
at hand  
at a high speed  
at a hotel  
at...km per hour  
at last  
at least  
at a loss  
at the match  
at midnight  
at the moment  
at most  
at night  
at noon  
at once  
at peace/war

at present  
at random  
at any rate  
at the same time  
at the station  
at the time  
at times  
at the top of  
at university  
at the weekend  
at 23 Oxford St.

---

## Before

before long

## By

by accident  
by air/rail/road/sea  
by appointment  
by birth  
by bus/car/plane etc.

by chance  
by cheque  
by day/night  
by far  
by force  
by hand  
by heart  
by land  
by luck

by means of  
by mistake  
by now  
by oneself  
by phone/post/air mail  
by one's side  
by the time  
by the way

---

## For

for ages  
for certain  
for a change  
for ever  
for fear (of)  
for fun  
for good  
(take sth) for granted  
for hire/sale

for instance  
for the rest of  
for one's sake  
for the time being  
for a while

## From

from experience  
from memory  
from now on  
from time to time

---

## In

in addition (to)  
in advance  
in agreement (with)  
in answer to  
in bed  
in the beginning  
in brief  
in case of  
in cash  
in charge of  
in colour  
in common  
in comparison with

in conclusion  
in good/bad condition/shape  
in control of  
in the country  
in danger  
in debt  
in demand  
in detail  
in difficulty  
in the direction of  
in doubt  
in the end  
in fact  
in fashion

in favour of  
in future  
in general  
in hand  
in good/bad health  
in hospital  
in a hotel  
in a hurry  
in ink/pencil/pen  
in love (with)  
in luxury  
in the meantime  
in the middle of  
in the mirror



in a moment	in a queue	in one's free time
in the mood	in reality	in touch (with)
in the morning	in return	in town
in need of	in the right/wrong	in turn
in the north/south	in safety	in uniform
in one's opinion	in seconds	in use
in order/a mess	in secret	in vain
in order to	in the shade/sun	in a loud/low voice
in pain	in short	in a way
in pairs	in a show	in the way
in particular	in sight (of)	in a word
in the past	in a state of	in other words
in person	in the station	in writing
in pieces	in the streets	
in place of	in the suburbs	<b>Into</b>
in politics	in good/bad taste	into pieces
in practice/theory	in tears	
in prison	in a bad temper	
in private/public	in time (for)	
in progress	in no time	

<b>Off</b>	on fire	on top of
off the air	on the... floor (of)	on tour
off duty	on foot	on the way
off the record	on the one/other hand	on the whole
off school/work	on holiday	
	on an island	<b>Out of</b>
<b>On</b>	on one's knees	out of breath
on a ...afternoon/evening	on the left/right	out of control
on the air	on one's mind	out of danger
on arrival	on New Year's Day	out of date
on behalf of	on the news	out of doors
on one's birthday	on the outskirts	out of fashion
on business	on one's own	out of hand
on the contrary	on page...	out of luck
on the corner	on the pavement	out of order
on a... day	on the phone	out of place
on one's death	on purpose	out of the question
on a diet	on the radio/television	out of reach
on duty	on sale	out of season
on earth	on second thought(s)	out of sight
on an excursion/a journey/a tour/a trip etc.	on this / the street (s)	out of stock
on an expedition	on strike	out of use
	on time	out of work

**To**  
to one's amazement/surprise

to this day

**Under**  
under age  
under arrest

under control  
under discussion  
under the impression

under pressure  
under strain

**With**  
with regard to  
with a view to

**Without**  
without delay  
without (a) doubt

without fail/success  
without warning



# Derivatives

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE/ADVERB
ability, inability, disability	enable, disable	able, unable, disabled
acceptance, acceptability	accept	(un)acceptable>-ly
accident		accidental>-ly
achievement	achieve	achievable
action, activity, activation, actor, actress, acting	act, activate	active, activated
addition, additive	add	additional>-ly
admiration, admirer	admire	admirable>-ly, admiring>-ly
admission, admittance	admit	admissible
(dis)advantage		(dis)advantageous
adventure, adventurer		adventurous>-ly
advertisement, advertiser, advert, advertising	advertise	advertised
advice, adviser, advisability	advise	advisable, advisory
agreement	agree	agreeable>-ly, agreed
alarm	alarm	alarmed, alarming>-ly
amazement	amaze	amazed, amazing>-ly
ambition		ambitious>-ly
anxiety		anxious>-ly
appearance	appear	apparent>-ly
applicant, application, applicator, appliance	apply	applicable, applied
argument	argue	arguable>-ly, argumentative
arrival	arrive	
astonishment	astonish	astonished, astonishing>-ly
attendance, attendant, attention	attend	(in)attentive>-ly
attraction, attractiveness	attract	attractive>-ly, attracted
automation		automatic>-ally
beginner, beginning	begin	beginning
behaviour	behave	behavioural
belief, believer	believe	(un)believable>-ly
bore, boredom	bore	bored, boring
breath, breathing, breather	breathe	(un)breathable, breathless, breathy, breathtaking
care, carelessness	care	caring, careful>-ly, careless>-ly
centre	centre, centralise	central>-ly
cheer, cheerfulness	cheer	cheering, cheerful>-ly, cheerless>-ly, cheery
choice	choose	choos(e)y
combination	combine	combined
comfort, comforter	comfort	(un)comfortable>-ly, comfortless, comforting
comparison, comparability	compare	comparative>-ly, comparable>-ly
competition	compete	competitive
complaint	complain	
conclusion	conclude	conclusive>-ly, concluding
confidence	confide	confident>-ly, confidential>-ly
connection	connect	connecting, connected
consideration	consider	considerable>-ly, (in)considerate>-ly, considered
conversation	converse	conversational, converse>-ly
correction, (in)correctness	correct	(in)correct>-ly, corrective>-ly
courage, encouragement, discouragement	encourage, discourage	courageous>-ly, encouraging>-ly, encouraged, discouraging>-ly, discouraged
creation, creature, creator, creativity	create	creative>-ly
crime, criminal, criminality		criminal>-ly
critic, criticism	criticise	critical, criticising
crowd	crowd	crowded
curiosity		curious>-ly
danger	endanger	dangerous>-ly, endangered
dark, darkness	darken	dark>-ly, darkened
day, daylight		daily
death	die	dead, deadly, deathly
decision, (in)decisiveness	decide	decided>-ly, (in)decisive>-ly
dependant, (in)dependence, dependency	depend	dependent>-ly, independent>-ly
description	describe	descriptive>-ly
destroyer, destruction	destroy	destructive>-ly
development, developer	develop	developing, developed



<b>NOUN</b>	<b>VERB</b>	<b>ADJECTIVE/ADVERB</b>
difference	differ	different>-ly
difficulty		difficult
disappointment	disappoint	disappointed, disappointing>-ly
discover, discovery	discover	discoverable
discussion	discuss	
economics, economist, economy	economise	economic, economical>-ly
education, educator	educate	educated, educational>-ly
employer, employee, (un)employment	employ	(un)unemployed, employable
end, ending	end	endless>-ly
energy	energise	energetic>-ally
enjoyment	enjoy	enjoyable>-ly
enthusiasm, enthusiast	enthuse	enthusiastic>-ally
equipment	equip	equipped
excitement	excite	exciting>-ly, excited>-ly, excitable
existence	exist	existent, non-existent, existing
expectation, expectancy	expect	(un)expected>-ly, expectant>-ly
experience, inexperience	experience	experienced, inexperienced, experiential
explanation	explain	explanatory
fail, failure	fail	failed, failing
fashion	fashion	fashionable>-ly
favour	favour	favourable>-ly, favourite
five		five, fifth
fool, foolishness	fool	fool, foolish>-ly
fortune, misfortune		fortunate>-ly, unfortunate>-ly
freedom	free	free>-ly
freezer, freezing	freeze	frozen, freezing
(in)frequency	frequent	frequent>-ly
friend, friendlessness, friendliness, friendship	befriend	friendly, friendless
growth	grow	grown
harm	harm	harmful>-ly, harmless>-ly
health		healthy>-ly
height	heighten	high>-ly
help, helper, helpfulness, helping, helplessness	help	helpful>-ly, helpless>-ly
humour, humorist		humorous>-ly, humourless
hunger	hunger	hungry>-ly
idea, idealisation, idealism, idealistic	idealise	ideal>-ly, idealistic>-ally
illness		ill
image, imagination	imagine	imaginary, imaginable, imaginative>-ly
		immediate>-ly
importance		important>-ly
impression	impress	impressive>-ly
improvement	improve	improved
information, informer	inform	informative>-ly
injury	injure	injured
inspection, inspector	inspect	
insurance, insurer	insure	insured
intention, intent	intend	intentional>-ly, intent>-ly, intended
invention, inventor	invent	inventive
investigation, investigator	investigate	investigative, investigatory
jealousy		jealous>-ly
laugh, laughing, laughter	laugh	laughing>-ly, laughable>-ly
length	lengthen	long, lengthy
life, living, liveliness	live	live, lifeless, living, lively, alive
logic		logical>-ly
loser, loss	lose	losing, lost
luck		lucky>-ly
marriage	marry	married
medication, medicine		medical>-ly, medicated
misery		miserable>-ly
motion, mover, move, movement	move	moving, movable, motionless
motor, motoring, motorist	motorise	motorised
murder, murderer, murderess	murder	murderous>-ly
nature	naturalise	natural>-ly
nerve, nervousness	nerve	nervous>-ly, nerveless, nervy
noise		noisy>-ly, noiseless>-ly
norm, normalisation, normality	normalise	(ab)normal>-ly
operation, operator	operate	operational, operative
(dis)order	order	(dis)ordered, (dis)orderly
origin, originality	originate	original>-ly



NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE/ADVERB
owner, ownership	own	own
pain	pain	painful>-ly, painless>-ly, pained
(im)patience		(im)patient>-ly
peace, peacefulness		peaceful>-ly
(im)perfection, perfectionism, perfectionist	perfect	perfect>-ly, perfectible
performer, performance	perform	
person, personality, personnel	personalise	personal>-ly
photograph, photo, photographer, photography	photograph	photographic>-ally
pleasure	please	pleased, pleasing>-ly, (un)pleasant>-ly
poison, poisoning, poisoner	poison	poisonous, poisoned
popularity, population	populate	populated
possession, possessor	possess	possessed, possessive
(im)possibility		(im)possible>-ly
practicality, practice, practitioner	practise	practical>-ly, practicable
prediction, (un)predictability	predict	predictive, (un)predictable>-ly
press, pressure	press, pressure	pressed, pressing
prevention	prevent	preventable, preventive>-ly
profession, professional, professionalism, professor	profess	professional>-ly
protection, protector	protect	protective>-ly, protected
punishment	punish	punishable, punishing, (un)punished
qualification	(dis)qualify	(un)qualified, disqualified
rain	rain	rainy
reaction, reactor	react, reactivate	reactive, reactionary
realisation, reality, realism, realist	realise	real>-ly, realistic>-ally
reason	reason	(un)reasonable>-ly
reduction	reduce	reduced, reducible
regularity, regulation, regulator	regulate, regularise	regular>-ly
relation, relationship, relative, relativity	relate	related, relative>-ly
(un)reliability	rely	(un)reliable>-ly
religion		religious>-ly
response, responsiveness, (ir)responsibility	respond	responsive>-ly, (ir)responsible>-ly
risk	risk	risky
safe, safety, saver, savings	save	safe>-ly
(dis)satisfaction	(dis)satisfy	(dis)satisfied, (dis)satisfying>-ly, (dis)satisfactory>-ly
science, scientist		scientific>-ally
security	secure	secure>-ly
sensational, sense, sensor, senselessness, sensibility, sensitivity	sense	sensible>-ly, senseless>-ly, sensitive>-ly, sensational>-ly
seriousness		serious>-ly
signature, sign, signal	sign, signal	signed
shortage, shortening	shorten	short>-ly
skill		skillful>-ly, skilled
solution	solve	solvable
starvation	starve	starving, starved
strength	strengthen	strong>-ly
success	succeed	(un)successful>-ly
suggestion	suggest	suggestive>-ly, suggestible
suit, suitability	suit	(un)suitable>-ly, suited
supplier, supply, supplies	supply	
surprise	surprise	surprising>-ly, surprised
surroundings	surround	surrounded, surrounding
taste, taster	taste	tasty, tasteful>-ly, tasteless>-ly
tendency	tend	
terror, terrorism, terrorist	terrify, terrorise	terrible>-ly, terrific>-ally, terrifying>-ly, terrified
theft, thief, thieving		thieving
thought	think	thinking, thoughtful>-ly, thoughtless>-ly
threat	threaten	threatened, threatening>-ly
tiredness	tire	tired, tiring>-ly, tireless>-ly, tiresome
tradition		traditional>-ly
trainer, trainee, training	train	trained, training
truth, truthfulness		true>-ly, truthful>-ly
(mis)understanding	(mis)understand	understandable, understanding
use, user, usefulness, uselessness	use	used, useful>-ly, useless>-ly
valuation, value, valuer, evaluation	value, evaluate	(in)valuable, valueless
variability, variant, variety, variation	vary	varied, various>-ly, variable>-ly
violence		violent>-ly



NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE/ADVERB
warmth, warmer	warm	warm>-ly
warning	warn	warning>-ly, warned
week, weekday, weekend		weekly
weight	weigh	weighty, weightless
wisdom		(un)wise>-ly

# Irregular Verbs

INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
be	was/were	been	lie	lay	lain
bear	bore	born(e)	light	lit	lit
beat	beat	beaten	lose	lost	lost
become	became	become	make	made	made
begin	began	begun	mean	meant	meant
bend	bent	bent	meet	met	met
bind	bound	bound	pay	paid	paid
bite	bit	bitten	put	put	put
blow	blew	blown	read	read	read
break	broke	broken	ride	rode	ridden
bring	brought	brought	ring	rang	rung
build	built	built	rise	rose	risen
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned	run	ran	run
buy	bought	bought	say	said	said
burst	burst	burst	see	saw	seen
catch	caught	caught	seek	sought	sought
choose	chose	chosen	sell	sold	sold
come	came	come	send	sent	sent
cost	cost	cost	set	set	set
creep	crept	crept	sew	sewed	sewn/sewed
cut	cut	cut	shake	shook	shaken
deal	dealt	dealt	shine	shone	shone
dig	dug	dug	shoot	shot	shot
do	did	done	show	showed	shown
draw	drew	drawn	shut	shut	shut
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed	sing	sang	sung
drink	drank	drunk	sink	sank	sunk
drive	drove	driven	sit	sat	sat
eat	ate	eaten	sleep	slept	slept
fall	fell	fallen	smell	smelt/smelled	smelt/smelled
feed	fed	fed	speak	spoke	spoken
feel	felt	felt	speed	sped	sped
fight	fought	fought	spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
find	found	found	spend	spent	spent
fly	flew	flown	spill	spilt/spilled	spilt/spilled
forget	forgot	forgotten	split	split	split
forgive	forgave	forgiven	spoil	spoil/spoiled	spoil/spoiled
freeze	froze	frozen	spread	spread	spread
get	got	got	stand	stood	stood
give	gave	given	steal	stole	stolen
go	went	gone	stick	stuck	stuck
grow	grew	grown	sting	stung	stung
hang	hung	hung	strike	struck	struck
have	had	had	sweep	swept	swept
hear	heard	heard	swear	swore	sworn
hide	hid	hidden	swim	swam	swum
hit	hit	hit	take	took	taken
hold	held	held	teach	taught	taught
hurt	hurt	hurt	tear	tore	torn
keep	kept	kept	tell	told	told
kneel	knelt	knelt	think	thought	thought
knit	knit/knitted	knit/knitted	throw	threw	thrown
know	knew	known	understand	understood	understood
lay	laid	laid	wake	woke	woken
lead	led	led	wear	wore	worn
lean	leant/leaned	leant/leaned	weave	wove	woven
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned	weep	wept	wept
leave	left	left	win	won	won
lend	lent	lent	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
let	let	let	write	wrote	written



# Contents

Revision Test 1 .....	170
Revision Test 2 .....	173
Revision Test 3 .....	176
Revision Test 4 .....	179
Revision Test 5 .....	182
Revision Test 6 .....	185
Final FCE Test .....	188
Final ECCE Test .....	192
Keys to Tests .....	197







# | Vocabulary Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. It was Sue's birthday, so she \_\_\_\_\_ a friend to celebrate.  
a. asked for                      b. asked out                      c. asked in                      d. asked with
2. After thinking about it, he finally \_\_\_\_\_ to accept the offer.  
a. came along                      b. came into                      c. came across                      d. came round
3. I remember Sally \_\_\_\_\_ something about a party on Saturday.  
a. reporting                      b. mentioning                      c. expressing                      d. praising
4. My boss \_\_\_\_\_ me because he thought I was worthy of the job.  
a. rented                      b. let                      c. hired                      d. lent
5. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ with her boyfriend last week.  
a. broke into                      b. broke down                      c. broke in                      d. broke up
6. I couldn't help but \_\_\_\_\_ the huge birthmark on her hand.  
a. look                      b. notice                      c. see                      d. watch
7. Do you think you can take Thursday off from \_\_\_\_\_?  
a. job                      b. work                      c. duty                      d. task
8. I can't do two things \_\_\_\_\_ .  
a. at last                      b. at least                      c. at the same time                      d. at first
9. I was surprised \_\_\_\_\_ her reaction.  
a. about                      b. by                      c. with                      d. of
10. How were your test \_\_\_\_\_, Brian?  
a. results                      b. solutions                      c. effects                      d. consequences

## B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. My mother is a primary school \_\_\_\_\_ . **TEACH**
2. What is your \_\_\_\_\_ kind of music? **FAVOUR**
3. I am not good at making \_\_\_\_\_ . **DECIDE**
4. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ basketball player. **PROFESSION**
5. She wants to have a \_\_\_\_\_ wedding. **TRADITION**



**C Choose the correct answers.**

Last week, a thief (1) \_\_\_\_\_ my house. He (2) \_\_\_\_\_ all of my jewellery, along with my television set and my stereo. (3) \_\_\_\_\_, I thought I had left the door unlocked by mistake. But then, I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ at the window and realised the glass was broken. I called the police right away, but they weren't very helpful. They just told me to avoid keeping expensive things in the house. Now, I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ buying an alarm to keep this from happening again.

1. a. broke up  
b. broke into  
c. broke out  
d. broke down

2. a. stole  
b. will steal  
c. steals  
d. was stealing

3. a. At least  
b. At first  
c. At most  
d. At present

4. a. noticed  
b. mentioned  
c. regarded  
d. looked

5. a. had considered  
b. consider  
c. am considering  
d. be considering



## Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ lie so much. Try to be more honest.  
a. couldn't                      b. wouldn't                      c. shouldn't                      d. can't
2. You're a good student John. You don't need \_\_\_\_\_ that hard.  
a. study                      b. to study                      c. studying                      d. to have been studying
3. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ to playing football.  
a. swimming                      b. to swim                      c. swim                      d. to be swimming
4. Alice, \_\_\_\_\_ I borrow your car?  
a. will                      b. would                      c. must                      d. could
5. Don't you remember \_\_\_\_\_ Lucy last week?  
a. meet                      b. to meet                      c. meeting                      d. to meeting
6. \_\_\_\_\_ I get you another glass of water?  
a. Shall                      b. Would                      c. Mustn't                      d. Can't
7. Maria suggested \_\_\_\_\_ on a short camping holiday.  
a. to go                      b. go                      c. going                      d. to going
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ left my keys at home because they're not in my bag.  
a. must have                      b. can have                      c. would have                      d. could have
9. Where's Harry? I \_\_\_\_\_ find him anywhere.  
a. wouldn't                      b. might not                      c. will not                      d. can't
10. You have to be careful not \_\_\_\_\_ anything insulting.  
a. to say                      b. to have said                      c. to be saying                      d. saying

## B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. I needed some milk, so I went to the supermarket.  
**get**                      I went to the supermarket \_\_\_\_\_ some milk.
2. Sue will make an effort to get there on time.  
**try**                      Sue \_\_\_\_\_ there on time.
3. Julie didn't lock the door when she left her house.  
**without**                      Julie \_\_\_\_\_ the door.
4. Karen, I'd like you to help me with the washing-up.  
**will**                      Karen, \_\_\_\_\_ with the washing-up?
5. Simon, let's go to an amusement park.  
**how**                      Simon, \_\_\_\_\_ to an amusement park?

# Vocabulary Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. Laura \_\_\_\_\_ well with everyone.  
a. gets along                      b. gets away                      c. gets by                      d. gets over
2. Why don't you try walking to work \_\_\_\_\_? It's not that far away after all!  
a. for a walk                      b. for ages                      c. for a change                      d. for ages
3. Don't forget to leave a \_\_\_\_\_ for the waiter.  
a. donation                      b. tip                      c. allowance                      d. loan
4. What \_\_\_\_\_ is used in Australia?  
a. fine                      b. bill                      c. income                      d. currency
5. He tries to \_\_\_\_\_ to the community by donating money to charity.  
a. give away                      b. give back                      c. give in                      d. give out
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ on the cruise ship was very helpful and friendly.  
a. crew                      b. staff                      c. team                      d. group
7. All the \_\_\_\_\_ at the dinner party were seated upon arrival.  
a. hosts                      b. visitors                      c. guests                      d. employees
8. You can never \_\_\_\_\_ Sarah to be on time. She's always late.  
a. count on                      b. count in                      c. count out                      d. count up
9. I called him by the wrong name \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. by heart                      b. by force                      c. by chance                      d. by mistake
10. They \_\_\_\_\_ two years ago and haven't spoken to each other since then.  
a. fell in                      b. fell out                      c. fell behind                      d. fell off

## B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. The reports show that it was a \_\_\_\_\_ year for the company. **SUCCESS**
2. She is tall, thin and extremely \_\_\_\_\_. Don't you think? **ATTRACT**
3. She is so \_\_\_\_\_ that she cries every time she sees a romantic film. **SENSE**
4. He didn't get the job because he didn't have the necessary \_\_\_\_\_. **QUALIFY**
5. The two countries didn't manage to reach an \_\_\_\_\_. **AGREE**



## C Choose the correct answers.

My sister was sick for a whole month. She had no energy and had (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in bed all day. She (2) \_\_\_\_\_ go to school, so she (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in her classes. The doctor told her she (4) \_\_\_\_\_ eat well and drink a lot of fluids. Feeling ill is not very fun, so I spent my time (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to cheer her up as much as I could. I bought her little presents and kept her company. We watched a lot of DVDs together, listened to music, and read magazines. Overall, she had a positive attitude the entire time even though it took such a long time for her to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ her illness.

1. a. stay  
b. to stay  
c. to be staying  
d. staying

4. a. should  
b. might  
c. may  
d. would

2. a. couldn't  
b. can't  
c. wouldn't  
d. mustn't

5. a. to try  
b. trying  
c. try  
d. to have tried

3. a. fell down  
b. fell out  
c. fell for  
d. fell behind

6. a. get by  
b. get on with  
c. get over  
d. get away

## Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. We are looking for \_\_\_\_\_ different place to go on holiday this year.  
a. the                                      b. one                                      c. a                                      d. an
2. I didn't find \_\_\_\_\_ of the two books interesting.  
a. either                                      b. neither                                      c. both                                      d. a few
3. \_\_\_\_\_ student has their own locker.  
a. Some                                      b. Any                                      c. Every                                      d. No
4. She is \_\_\_\_\_ girl in the entire class.  
a. smarter                                      b. smarter than                                      c. the smart                                      d. the smartest
5. Even if I tried my hardest, I could never run as \_\_\_\_\_ as him.  
a. fast                                      b. fastest                                      c. faster                                      d. the fastest
6. \_\_\_\_\_ my brothers play sports.  
a. Neither                                      b. None                                      c. Both of                                      d. Some
7. Feel free to visit us \_\_\_\_\_ day next week.  
a. no                                      b. a few                                      c. most                                      d. any
8. I won't eat \_\_\_\_\_ spicy.  
a. everything                                      b. any                                      c. anything                                      d. nothing
9. \_\_\_\_\_ time I eat too much, my stomach starts to hurt.  
a. Some                                      b. Every                                      c. Most                                      d. Many
10. He behaved \_\_\_\_\_ at the party.  
a. bad                                      b. worst                                      c. badly                                      d. worse

## B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Although she acts very well, she has never had a leading role.  
**good**      Despite being \_\_\_\_\_, she has never had a leading role.
2. In some countries, the ox is used for pulling vehicles or carrying things.  
**are**      In some countries, \_\_\_\_\_ for pulling vehicles or carrying things.
3. The Economist is published every week.  
**a**      The Economist \_\_\_\_\_ magazine.
4. Two hours later, David had swum six miles, but Julie had only swum three.  
**twice**      Two hours later, David had swum \_\_\_\_\_ Julie.
5. The book was less interesting than I thought it would be.  
**as**      The book \_\_\_\_\_ I thought it would be.



# Vocabulary Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

- \_\_\_\_\_ my bag for a minute, will you?  
a. Hold on      b. Hold on to      c. Hold up      d. Hold out
- He \_\_\_\_\_ making fun of her even though she was crying.  
a. kept off      b. kept out      c. kept on      d. kept up
- Short skirts are \_\_\_\_\_ this season.  
a. in fashion      b. in favour      c. in detail      d. in common
- I could tell from a distance that those diamonds were \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. false      b. untrue      c. fake      d. imitation
- She was so upset that she \_\_\_\_\_ the phone on him.  
a. handed in      b. hung about      c. hung on      d. hung up
- My dad is \_\_\_\_\_ of the human resource department at his job.  
a. in advance      b. in case      c. in charge      d. in the beginning
- Her table \_\_\_\_\_ are horrible! She's so messy!  
a. habits      b. behaviours      c. manners      d. manner
- Try not to \_\_\_\_\_ the secret to anyone.  
a. confess      b. reveal      c. admit      d. display
- I don't think that hat \_\_\_\_\_ your outfit.  
a. goes ahead      b. goes out      c. goes on      d. goes with
- Eating healthily can \_\_\_\_\_ you from gaining weight.  
a. avoid      b. prevent      c. keep up      d. reduce

## B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

- He gave a brilliant \_\_\_\_\_ . **PERFORM**
- Nowadays, children are exposed to \_\_\_\_\_ from a very early age. **VIOLENT**
- His \_\_\_\_\_ is becoming more and more hostile. **BEHAVE**
- They say that " \_\_\_\_\_ killed the cat." **CURIOUS**
- After a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ , he made the right decision. **THINK**

**C Choose the correct answers.**

History is a subject that has always interested me. Even as (1) \_\_\_\_\_ little girl, I loved going to museums and reading about ancient civilisations. In school, I was (2) \_\_\_\_\_ student in my History class. I always paid attention and got really good grades. After high school, I discussed it with my parents and decided to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and study archaeology in college. Now, I work as (4) \_\_\_\_\_ archaeologist and I absolutely love my job. Every time I meet a young person with a dream, I always encourage them to pursue their passion. There is no (5) \_\_\_\_\_ feeling than doing what you love.

1. a. the  
b. a  
c. -  
d. one

2. a. the best  
b. better  
c. best  
d. good

3. a. go out  
b. go on  
c. go with  
d. go ahead

4. a. a  
b. an  
c. one  
d. the

5. a. greater  
b. great  
c. greatest  
d. the greatest



## Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. They looked at \_\_\_\_\_ and laughed.  
a. their                      b. another                      c. each other                      d. every other
2. My handbag \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday morning.  
a. is stolen                      b. stole                      c. was stolen                      d. was stealing
3. Tricia's hair \_\_\_\_\_ by the hairdresser.  
a. dyed                      b. was dyed                      c. had dyed                      d. were dyed
4. My mum \_\_\_\_\_ my room yesterday.  
a. had me clean                      b. had me cleaned                      c. had me cleaning                      d. is having me clean
5. I remember \_\_\_\_\_ my picture taken by you.  
a. to have                      b. having                      c. to be having                      d. had
6. \_\_\_\_\_ cat is friendlier than yours.  
a. We                      b. Ours                      c. Our                      d. Us
7. Please help \_\_\_\_\_ to more food – there's plenty.  
a. each other                      b. ourselves                      c. us                      d. yourselves
8. You wouldn't be wet if you \_\_\_\_\_ an umbrella with you.  
a. had taken                      b. took                      c. take                      d. will take
9. If I \_\_\_\_\_ you, I wouldn't get upset over something so insignificant.  
a. am                      b. had been                      c. were                      d. was being
10. If you \_\_\_\_\_ New York, make sure to see the Empire State Building.  
a. visited                      b. have visited                      c. had visited                      d. should visit

## B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. They say that he is a millionaire.  
**said**                      He \_\_\_\_\_ a millionaire.
2. If you want everyone to understand you, speak more clearly.  
**yourself**                      If you want to \_\_\_\_\_, speak more clearly.
3. I have to send the application form by Friday.  
**be**                      The application form \_\_\_\_\_ by Friday.
4. If you happen to see Dr Turner, give him my regards.  
**should**                      If \_\_\_\_\_ Dr Turner, give him my regards.
5. Someone broke Gary's front teeth while he was playing football.  
**had**                      Gary \_\_\_\_\_ while he was playing football.

# Vocabulary Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

- Even though he's missing a leg, he leads a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ life.  
a. common                      b. usual                      c. normal                      d. boring
- Can you please \_\_\_\_\_ the word 'destiny' in the dictionary?  
a. look over                      b. look up                      c. look into                      d. look after
- We \_\_\_\_\_ that you stay the night. We won't take 'no' for an answer.  
a. persist                      b. resist                      c. push                      d. insist
- He doesn't really like meat – \_\_\_\_\_, beef.  
a. in pieces                      b. in particular                      c. in general                      d. in order
- Despite his appearance, he's really not as \_\_\_\_\_ as he seems.  
a. tough                      b. difficult                      c. hard                      d. demanding
- He spoke so softly that it was difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ what he was saying.  
a. make for                      b. make up                      c. make out                      d. make in
- The \_\_\_\_\_ Egyptians built the Pyramids.  
a. ancient                      b. antique                      c. elderly                      d. old
- I owe John a lot of money and I still haven't \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. paid him off                      b. paid him back                      c. pulled him over                      d. pulled him down
- \_\_\_\_\_, the actor looks a lot shorter than he is on screen.  
a. In secret                      b. In private                      c. In theory                      d. In reality
- He is the only \_\_\_\_\_ ancestor of the King.  
a. live                      b. living                      c. alive                      d. lively

## B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

- I don't \_\_\_\_\_ go out on weekdays. **NORMAL**
- He gave us a \_\_\_\_\_ version of the story. **DIFFER**
- He stood there in the \_\_\_\_\_, with the lights off. **DARK**
- These snakes are \_\_\_\_\_. **POISON**
- There was an expression of \_\_\_\_\_ on his face. **BORE**



## C Choose the correct answers.

Nowadays, more and more children (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in homes where two languages are spoken. Language experts have found that children can learn two languages at the same time and that they can't really tell the difference between (2) \_\_\_\_\_. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ they speak more than two languages, they can still easily switch from one language to the other. According to Dr Emma Redmond, children are not confused by using two languages once they have learnt when and with whom they should use each language. However, the most important thing is to let children learn in an environment free from pressure - a relaxing and supportive (4) \_\_\_\_\_. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ they love Power Rangers, then they should feel free to talk about their favourite heroes in either of the two languages.

1. a. are raised  
b. raise  
c. are raising  
d. had been raised

4. a. another  
b. whatever  
c. ones  
d. one

2. a. themselves  
b. it  
c. them  
d. us

5. a. When  
b. If  
c. On condition  
d. Providing

3. a. Unless  
b. In case  
c. Whether  
d. Even if

## Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ he has a car, he hardly ever drives it.  
a. Although                      b. Despite                      c. No matter                      d. However
2. \_\_\_\_\_ her brave effort, she never made it to the final round.  
a. While                      b. Even though                      c. Despite                      d. Whatever
3. She speaks to him as if she \_\_\_\_\_ him for years.  
a. has known                      b. will know                      c. is known                      d. knew
4. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ walk so fast. I can't keep up with you.  
a. wouldn't                      b. couldn't                      c. shouldn't                      d. mustn't
5. Lisa would rather \_\_\_\_\_ in tonight. She doesn't feel like going out.  
a. be staying                      b. stay                      c. had stayed                      d. have been staying
6. My sister suggested \_\_\_\_\_ away for the weekend.  
a. go                      b. going                      c. gone                      d. to be going
7. The painting \_\_\_\_\_ is in the museum is really famous.  
a. whom                      b. whose                      c. that                      d. who
8. She fell down \_\_\_\_\_ she was getting off the bus.  
a. until                      b. as                      c. after                      d. before
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ that he would pick me up from work tomorrow.  
a. says                      b. is saying                      c. has been saying                      d. said
10. They've got a nice house, \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
a. haven't they                      b. they haven't                      c. won't they                      d. have they

## B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. "Drop your gun at once!" the police officer shouted at the robber.  
**ordered**                      The police officer \_\_\_\_\_ his gun at once.
2. "If only I could explain everything," she sighed.  
**wished**                      She \_\_\_\_\_ everything.
3. Is the castle open to visitors?  
**know**                      Do you \_\_\_\_\_ open to visitors?
4. I finished reading the book and then I went to bed.  
**until**                      I didn't go to bed \_\_\_\_\_ the book.
5. That man stole the woman's purse and he is now leaving the shop.  
**that**                      The \_\_\_\_\_ the shop stole the woman's purse.



# Vocabulary Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

- Alice recently \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of weight.  
a. put aside                      b. put on                      c. put up                      d. put out
- She always gets \_\_\_\_\_ when speaking in front of a large group of people.  
a. nervous                      b. mad                      c. wild                      d. irritable
- She was \_\_\_\_\_ of her horrible behaviour.  
a. timid                      b. embarrassed                      c. shy                      d. ashamed
- Why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ those new trousers I bought you?  
a. try in                      b. try out                      c. try on                      d. try up
- He ran and hid behind a tree in order to be \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. out of reach                      b. out of danger                      c. out of control                      d. out of breath
- You must first \_\_\_\_\_ the water before adding the rice.  
a. fry                      b. bake                      c. roast                      d. boil
- I have an important job \_\_\_\_\_ on Monday.  
a. interview                      b. debate                      c. discussion                      d. dialogue
- He \_\_\_\_\_ a small bird with the car.  
a. ran away                      b. ran into                      c. ran out of                      d. ran over
- Can you please \_\_\_\_\_ the clothes that are on the bed?  
a. wrap                      b. fold                      c. tie                      d. fasten
- I \_\_\_\_\_ John as one of my closest friends.  
a. think                      b. consider                      c. suppose                      d. regard

## B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

- \_\_\_\_\_ is the primary concern of our automobile company. **SAFE**
- He leads a very \_\_\_\_\_ lifestyle. **HEALTH**
- Put your \_\_\_\_\_ at the bottom of the page. **SIGN**
- Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ heating in your flat? **CENTRE**
- Japanese cars are said to be very \_\_\_\_\_. **RELY**

### C Choose the correct answers.

Suppose you lived in a small town, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ you miss the city? Many people would rather live in the peaceful suburbs than deal with the crowded, noisy streets of the city. At least that's what I thought. I had lived in New York City for 3 years, and after a while, I couldn't (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the noise and pollution. It was causing me to be a very (3) \_\_\_\_\_ person. So, I considered the option of moving to the suburbs. Now, after five years of living away from the city, I kind of miss it. I've got a new neighbour (4) \_\_\_\_\_ just moved from the city. She says that she misses the city too sometimes. So now, we arrange to go into the city every now and then. I guess you can't have your cake and eat it too, (5) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

1. a. could  
b. should  
c. would  
d. do

2. a. put aside  
b. put on  
c. put up  
d. put up with

3. a. mad  
b. wild  
c. irritable  
d. furious

4. a. who  
b. which  
c. of which  
d. whose

5. a. do you  
b. can you  
c. shall you  
d. can't you



## Grammar Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. People \_\_\_\_\_ her always manage to get what they want.  
a. such                                      b. like                                      c. as                                      d. except for
2. \_\_\_\_\_ his behaviour, it is no wonder he was fired.  
a. Considering                              b. According to                              c. As a result                              d. Particularly
3. "I don't like coffee".  
"I \_\_\_\_\_, but I like tea."  
a. don't either                              b. neither don't                              c. do too                              d. do so
4. Lisa had a headache, \_\_\_\_\_ she decided to stay in bed.  
a. not only                                      b. but                                      c. so                                      d. besides
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the film critic, the film is not worth watching.  
a. Regarding                                      b. Concerning                                      c. In contrast to                                      d. According to
6. \_\_\_\_\_ home, she realised she had left her house keys at work.  
a. To drive                                      b. Driving                                      c. She drives                                      d. She drove
7. \_\_\_\_\_ behind at work, he decided to stay late.  
a. To have fallen                                      b. Having fell                                      c. Having to fall                                      d. Having fallen
8. No sooner had I opened the door \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone began ringing.  
a. when                                      b. until                                      c. than                                      d. but
9. The audience was utterly \_\_\_\_\_ by the play.  
a. boring                                      b. bore                                      c. bored                                      d. a bore
10. She is \_\_\_\_\_ rude and mean. I can't understand why you're friends with her.  
a. neither                                      b. either                                      c. both                                      d. not only

## B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. It is such a nice day today!  
**so**                      It \_\_\_\_\_ today!
2. He never told me lies.  
**once**                      Not \_\_\_\_\_ me lies.
3. Jason was the only person who didn't agree with the proposal.  
**except**                      Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ with the proposal.
4. Sonia didn't enjoy herself at the theatre, as the play made her feel rather depressed.  
**was**                      Sonia thought \_\_\_\_\_ and didn't enjoy herself at the theatre.
5. One of the things we still don't know is the time of the accident.  
**occured**                      What \_\_\_\_\_ one of the things we still don't know.

# Vocabulary Practice

## A Choose the correct answers.

1. He can't cope \_\_\_\_\_ all the workload.  
a. about                                      b. with                                      c. in                                      d. for
2. Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_ a table for four for Friday evening.  
a. book                                      b. hire                                      c. reserve                                      d. call
3. He was arrested \_\_\_\_\_ murder.  
a. of                                      b. by                                      c. with                                      d. for
4. Try not to \_\_\_\_\_ more than one project at work. You'll get overwhelmed.  
a. take after                                      b. take on                                      c. take up                                      d. take off
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ her soda because she was thirsty.  
a. chewed                                      b. swallowed                                      c. gulped                                      d. bit
6. Don't forget to \_\_\_\_\_ the lights before you leave the house.  
a. turn up                                      b. turn on                                      c. turn off                                      d. turn down
7. The little girl was \_\_\_\_\_ on her way back from school and hasn't been seen since.  
a. robbed                                      b. kidnapped                                      c. stolen                                      d. taken
8. How often do you \_\_\_\_\_ at the gym?  
a. work out                                      b. wear out                                      c. wash up                                      d. watch out
9. Even though everyone was panicking, he tried to keep the situation \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. under pressure                                      b. under arrest                                      c. under the impression                                      d. under control
10. I prefer to sit under the umbrella in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. sunrise                                      b. shadow                                      c. shade                                      d. sunlight

## B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. The best \_\_\_\_\_ against weight gain is exercise. **PREVENT**
2. His death was a great \_\_\_\_\_ for everyone. **LOSE**
3. In the \_\_\_\_\_, she didn't like him. **BEGIN**
4. Sometimes you have to pay \_\_\_\_\_ to the details. **ATTEND**
5. Documentaries can be very \_\_\_\_\_. **INFORM**



### C Choose the correct answers.

Does your busy lifestyle leave you feeling (1) \_\_\_\_\_? A balanced diet can help you feel more energetic for longer. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ what you may think, eating a wide variety of low-fat, high energy foods like fruit, vegetables and lean protein can help immensely. (3) \_\_\_\_\_ eating right, it's important to do things for yourself. (4) \_\_\_\_\_, after a tiring day at work, give yourself a treat. Take a bubble bath, read, or listen to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ music. Also, don't forget to get six to eight hours of sleep each night. And, most importantly, try to take it easy!

1. a. exhausted  
b. exhausting  
c. being exhausted  
d. exhaustion

2. a. Although  
b. Despite  
c. Whatever  
d. Whereas

3. a. Also  
b. In addition to  
c. Especially  
d. In fact

4. a. However  
b. Not only  
c. Particularly  
d. For instance

5. a. relaxation  
b. relax  
c. relaxed  
d. relaxing

# Final FCE Test

## PART 1

For questions 1-12, read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap. Mark your answers on the separate answer sheet.

### A MEMORY

My first day at school is a memory which will always stand \_\_\_\_\_ (1) in my mind. I entered the gate and stared at the tall grey building. I put \_\_\_\_\_ (2) my anxiety and kept walking. Students were talking to friends \_\_\_\_\_ (3) they hadn't seen all summer. They briefly glanced my way, not paying \_\_\_\_\_ (4) attention. I felt out of place, wishing I could be somewhere more familiar. Then the bell rang. It was time for me to go to class.

I walked down the corridor, trying to balance the \_\_\_\_\_ (5) of books I was holding and trying to lose myself in the \_\_\_\_\_ (6). I reached the classroom and took a deep breath. My mouth was dry. My heart pounding. I entered the room and all twenty-four pairs of eyes fell upon me, taking in every detail of my \_\_\_\_\_ (7). I had never felt so uncomfortable in all my life. Someone called out, "Why do we always get the new teachers? They never know what they're doing!" he \_\_\_\_\_ (8).

The comment made me feel even worse. I tried to remember all the things I had learnt during my training, \_\_\_\_\_ (9) nothing came to mind. In practice, everything seemed different. I quickly had to think of something to \_\_\_\_\_ (10). In the end, I did. I don't really recall what, but somehow I \_\_\_\_\_ (11) to get through the lesson.

I surely didn't \_\_\_\_\_ (12) my reactions that first day at school. But looking back now, I can laugh about the whole thing. I suppose everyone goes through something like this on their first day at work.

### ANSWER SHEET

- |    |               |            |                |              |
|----|---------------|------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1  | A by          | B out      | C up for       | D on         |
| 2  | A aside       | B away     | C off          | D out        |
| 3  | A whose       | B why      | C which        | D whom       |
| 4  | A plenty      | B very     | C too          | D much       |
| 5  | A heap        | B bundle   | C pile         | D bunch      |
| 6  | A viewers     | B audience | C spectators   | D crowd      |
| 7  | A image       | B picture  | C appearance   | D view       |
| 8  | A disapproved | B blamed   | C accused      | D criticised |
| 9  | A however     | B instead  | C despite      | D otherwise  |
| 10 | A remark      | B speak    | C say          | D tell       |
| 11 | A capable     | B managed  | C able         | D succeeded  |
| 12 | A wait        | B see      | C look forward | D anticipate |

1	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
2	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
3	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
4	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
5	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
6	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
7	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
8	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
9	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
10	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
11	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
12	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D



# | PART 2

For questions 13-24, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. Write your answers in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

## FISH AND CHIPS

Fried fish and chips, which happens \_\_\_\_\_ (13) be a national food for the Britons, has been around \_\_\_\_\_ (14) over 100 years. No one knows exactly \_\_\_\_\_ (15) fish and chips came about; it's still a mystery. \_\_\_\_\_ (16) , it is known that fried fish was \_\_\_\_\_ (17) sale in the streets of London in the 1830s. Chips \_\_\_\_\_ (18) thought to have been introduced in the 1870s.

When fish and chip shops started, they spread quickly and soon \_\_\_\_\_ (19) an important part of working-class life. \_\_\_\_\_ (20) popular were they that you were sure to find a fish and chip shop on every second or third street corner in industrial towns. It was convenient, hot food and more importantly, cheap. The fish and chips was always wrapped in newspaper in order to be kept warm on the \_\_\_\_\_ (21) home. Today, fish and chips is still part of the British culture and some families still have it for lunch or dinner. It's also a tourist attraction. Restaurant chains have been opened, \_\_\_\_\_ (22) . They even wrap up the fish and chips in imitation newspaper. However, this custom is under threat. More and more traditional fish and chip shops end \_\_\_\_\_ (23) closing down \_\_\_\_\_ (24) year. Will this British custom slowly disappear?

**ANSWER SHEET**

DO NOT WRITE HERE

13		13
14		14
15		15
16		16
17		17
18		18
19		19
20		20
21		21
22		22
23		23
24		24

# | PART 3

For questions 25-34, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. Write your answers in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

## FLYING FISH

It may seem \_\_\_\_\_ (25) but some fish actually do fly. They are fish of the Exocoetidae family and are \_\_\_\_\_ (26) found in tropical waters. They have the \_\_\_\_\_ (27) to travel up to 400 metres in the air, using their fins. Their \_\_\_\_\_ (28) in and out of the water are very elegant. Why do they fly? Well, for their own \_\_\_\_\_ (29). It's a matter of \_\_\_\_\_ (30) if they want to avoid predators like dolphins, in the water. \_\_\_\_\_ (31) though, the safety the air offers is questionable, as \_\_\_\_\_ (32) fish-eating birds may be flying overhead. And if the flying fish get really \_\_\_\_\_ (33), there is always the \_\_\_\_\_ (34) that a predator may be waiting at the landing point.

- BELIEVE
- FREQUENT
- ABLE
- MOVE
- PROTECT
- NECESSARY
- SURPRISE
- THREAT
- LUCK
- POSSIBLE

**ANSWER SHEET**

DO NOT  
WRITE HERE

25		25
26		26
27		27
28		28
29		29
30		30
31		31
32		32
33		33
34		34



# PART 4

For questions 35-42, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Write the missing words in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

35. I would really like to have a good relationship with my parents, but I don't.

**got**

I wish \_\_\_\_\_ my parents.

## ANSWER SHEET

35		35	0	1	2
			<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

36. The puzzle was too difficult for anyone to solve.

**so**

The puzzle was \_\_\_\_\_ could solve it.

36		36	0	1	2
			<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

37. I'd buy a car but I'm unemployed.

**out**

If I \_\_\_\_\_, I'd buy a car.

37		37	0	1	2
			<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

38. Today at work, Debbie was constantly talking about her trip to Hungary.

**nothing**

Today at work, Debbie \_\_\_\_\_ her trip to Hungary.

38		38	0	1	2
			<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

39. I prefer to eat spicy food.

**preference**

I \_\_\_\_\_ spicy food.

39		39	0	1	2
			<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

40. The workers demolished the old building on Parker Street yesterday.

**pulled**

The old building on Parker Street \_\_\_\_\_ by the workers yesterday.

40		40	0	1	2
			<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

41. Ted finds it difficult to study more than four hours a day.

**used**

Ted \_\_\_\_\_ more than four hours a day.

41		41	0	1	2
			<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

42. "Don't take the car because I need it," my brother said.

**told**

My brother \_\_\_\_\_ the car because he needed it.

42		42	0	1	2
			<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

# Final ECCE Test

## Grammar

1. Let me introduce you \_\_\_\_\_ my husband Alex.
  - a. at
  - b. by
  - c. to
  - d. with
2. You should take an umbrella if it \_\_\_\_\_ outside.
  - a. is raining
  - b. rained
  - c. would rain
  - d. will rain
3. My sister Jane is afraid ' \_\_\_\_\_ dogs.
  - a. about
  - b. of
  - c. from
  - d. with
4. He really wanted \_\_\_\_\_ abroad during his senior year.
  - a. study
  - b. studied
  - c. studying
  - d. to study
5. "I just lost my job!"  
"I'm so sorry \_\_\_\_\_."
  - a. to hear that
  - b. that I heard
  - c. for what I heard
  - d. to have that heard
6. In the end, Sarah had \_\_\_\_\_ our help.
  - a. nothing to need of
  - b. all need of
  - c. little need of
  - d. to need
7. It's always difficult deciding \_\_\_\_\_ to cook for dinner.
  - a. that's
  - b. what
  - c. not
  - d. why
8. By the time you get my letter, I \_\_\_\_\_ town.
  - a. will leave
  - b. am leaving
  - c. had left
  - d. will have left
9. Your test results should arrive \_\_\_\_\_ day now.
  - a. each
  - b. on a
  - c. any
  - d. one
10. That's the couple for \_\_\_\_\_ I sometimes babysit.
  - a. who
  - b. whom
  - c. them
  - d. what
11. Take a flashlight, \_\_\_\_\_ you will not be able to see anything in the dark.
  - a. unless
  - b. otherwise
  - c. however
  - d. despite
12. "Do you want to come with us to the beach this weekend?"  
"I wish \_\_\_\_\_, but I have too much studying to do."
  - a. I could
  - b. I did
  - c. I would
  - d. I had
13. \_\_\_\_\_ there before, I didn't want to go again.
  - a. To have been
  - b. Because of being
  - c. Having been
  - d. To having been



14. You can borrow my car as long as you \_\_\_\_\_  
drink and drive.  
a. do not  
b. will not  
c. can not  
d. must not
15. \_\_\_\_\_ my alarm clock didn't ring, I woke up  
on time.  
a. Despite  
b. Despite of  
c. However  
d. Even though
16. She must be the most beautiful woman I \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. ever have seen  
b. have never seen  
c. have ever seen  
d. will ever see
17. "I'm really sleepy."  
"So \_\_\_\_\_ I. Let's go to bed."  
a. do  
b. was  
c. did  
d. am
18. I hardly \_\_\_\_\_ eat junk food.  
a. ever  
b. never  
c. rarely  
d. rather
19. I bought a dress the same color \_\_\_\_\_ yours.  
a. of  
b. to  
c. as  
d. with
20. "Where's Lucy?"  
"She's out \_\_\_\_\_."  
a. shopping  
b. to shopping  
c. go shopping  
d. for shopping
21. We don't \_\_\_\_\_ get visitors this time of year.  
a. often  
b. never  
c. sometimes  
d. rarely
22. I can't run \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
a. as fast as  
b. so fast  
c. so faster that  
d. the faster of
23. He lives in an apartment \_\_\_\_\_ is by the sea.  
a. it  
b. that  
c. what  
d. where
24. \_\_\_\_\_ you say, I still won't believe you.  
a. Forever  
b. However  
c. Whatever  
d. Wherever
25. Banks \_\_\_\_\_ on public holidays.  
a. are closed  
b. are closing  
c. will be closing  
d. to be closed
26. Don't hesitate to call me \_\_\_\_\_ of an emergency.  
a. provided  
b. as long  
c. though  
d. in case
27. I have very \_\_\_\_\_ respect for people who litter.  
a. a little  
b. little  
c. few  
d. a few
28. \_\_\_\_\_ point in arguing. It'll only make the  
situation worse.  
a. It's no  
b. It isn't  
c. There's no  
d. There isn't

29. I can't believe you've never heard \_\_\_\_\_ Britney Spears!  
a. about  
b. off  
c. from  
d. of
30. Since they broke up, they've stopped \_\_\_\_\_ each other.  
a. to call  
b. having called  
c. having to call  
d. calling
31. My brother is \_\_\_\_\_ than me.  
a. much elder  
b. much older  
c. more older  
d. more old
32. You'll never believe who I ran \_\_\_\_\_ at the supermarket!  
a. out  
b. up  
c. down  
d. into
33. Hardly \_\_\_\_\_ when she told him to be quiet.  
a. he spoke  
b. he had spoken  
c. had he spoken  
d. has he spoken
34. "\_\_\_\_\_ suitcase is this?"  
"It's Lena's."  
a. What  
b. Which  
c. Whom  
d. Whose
35. \_\_\_\_\_ to being loud, he's also very rude.  
a. In addition  
b. In spite  
c. Even though  
d. Regardless

---

## | Vocabulary

36. I made a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ with the doctor for Wednesday afternoon.  
a. event  
b. meeting  
c. date  
d. appointment
37. The boss asked Allan to work overtime and he \_\_\_\_\_ accepted.  
a. anxiously  
b. ambitiously  
c. carefully  
d. willingly
38. The crime he committed will cause him to spend the rest of his life behind \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. jail  
b. poles  
c. iron  
d. bars
39. My friend Sally is \_\_\_\_\_ to chocolate. She eats way too much of it!  
a. obsessed  
b. devoted  
c. addicted  
d. absorbed
40. I'll be out all afternoon running \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. tasks  
b. errands  
c. affairs  
d. events
41. He went down in history as a \_\_\_\_\_ tyrant, hated by all.  
a. merciful  
b. ruthless  
c. forgetful  
d. forgiving



42. Isn't there room for the suitcases in the \_\_\_\_\_?  
 a. hood  
 b. trunk  
 c. bumper  
 d. dashboard
43. Mike, can I \_\_\_\_\_ your car? Mine has broken down.  
 a. borrow  
 b. own  
 c. rent  
 d. get
44. The woman refused to \_\_\_\_\_ the man's offer to drive her home.  
 a. deny  
 b. comply  
 c. accept  
 d. agree
45. The five star hotel on the beach is \_\_\_\_\_ recommended.  
 a. largely  
 b. highly  
 c. very  
 d. a lot
46. That skirt is way too \_\_\_\_\_ on me!  
 a. tense  
 b. tight  
 c. hard  
 d. tough
47. The slower you eat, the better you \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. munch  
 b. swallow  
 c. snack  
 d. digest
48. Laura took \_\_\_\_\_ on the homeless man and gave him some change.  
 a. shame  
 b. sorrow  
 c. pity  
 d. grief
49. John \_\_\_\_\_ his mother he would never lie to her again.  
 a. determined  
 b. reminded  
 c. assured  
 d. certified
50. That scene in the movie was so funny that the whole theatre \_\_\_\_\_ into laughter.  
 a. burst  
 b. cried  
 c. went  
 d. dropped
51. Even if he worked all night, there was still no way he could meet the \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. finish line  
 b. timing  
 c. end  
 d. deadline
52. The \_\_\_\_\_ of his house has risen greatly.  
 a. value  
 b. worth  
 c. expense  
 d. merit
53. I really can't \_\_\_\_\_ the way he laughs.  
 a. enjoy  
 b. listen  
 c. stand  
 d. approve
54. Don't worry, we'll figure something out; after all, where there is a \_\_\_\_\_ there is a way.  
 a. hope  
 b. wish  
 c. will  
 d. desire
55. It took her years to \_\_\_\_\_ her sister's death.  
 a. go through  
 b. put on  
 c. give away  
 d. get over
56. Did Elise \_\_\_\_\_ decide to quit her job?  
 a. definitely  
 b. highly  
 c. probably  
 d. possibly
57. Can you please tell me if the price of the meal \_\_\_\_\_ tax?  
 a. embodies  
 b. holds  
 c. consists  
 d. includes

58. My math test results were a real \_\_\_\_\_.
- fight
  - disaster
  - tragedy
  - battle
59. As I was walking down the street, I \_\_\_\_\_ an old friend of mine.
- came up
  - found out
  - ran into
  - gave up
60. The dress fits you perfectly, but I don't think the color \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- matches
  - suits
  - goes
  - looks
61. My teacher won't be back from her \_\_\_\_\_ until next Tuesday.
- trip
  - excursion
  - excavation
  - travel
62. The man gave me a detailed \_\_\_\_\_ of what happened on his trip.
- story
  - interpretation
  - account
  - explanation
63. There was a (n) \_\_\_\_\_ on the elevator door saying that it was out of order.
- warning
  - caution
  - emergency
  - notice
64. Despite its appearance, the plane was \_\_\_\_\_ new.
- simply
  - fairly
  - deeply
  - highly
65. An increasing number of credit card holders \_\_\_\_\_.
- overpay
  - overspend
  - overprice
  - overcharge
66. I \_\_\_\_\_ goodbye as I dropped her off.
- showed
  - turned
  - pointed
  - waved
67. He sat quietly the whole time and didn't \_\_\_\_\_ a single word.
- yell
  - shout
  - utter
  - murmer
68. Is there a reason you feel so \_\_\_\_\_?
- red
  - blue
  - green
  - white
69. Don't press that button! It will \_\_\_\_\_ the alarm.
- ring
  - load
  - energize
  - activate
70. After the play, the \_\_\_\_\_ stood up and applauded.
- observers
  - viewers
  - audience
  - listeners



# Key to Revision Tests

## REVISION TEST 1

### Grammar Practice

A.

1. a
2. b
3. c
4. d
5. a
6. c
7. a
8. b
9. b
10. c

B.

1. does not go to
2. am thinking of visiting
3. had finished studying by
4. something exploded
5. think it will rain

### Vocabulary Practice

A.

1. b
2. d
3. b
4. c
5. d
6. b
7. b
8. c
9. b
10. a

B.

1. teacher
2. favourite
3. decisions
4. professional
5. traditional

C.

1. b
2. a
3. b
4. d
5. c

## REVISION TEST 2

### Grammar Practice

A.

1. c
2. b
3. a
4. d
5. c
6. a
7. c
8. a
9. d
10. a

B.

1. to get
2. will try to be
3. left the house without locking
4. will you help me
5. how about going

### Vocabulary Practice

A.

1. a
2. c
3. b
4. d
5. b
6. a
7. c
8. a
9. d
10. b

B.

1. successful
2. attractive
3. sensitive
4. qualifications
5. agreement

C.

1. b
2. a
3. d
4. a
5. b
6. c

## REVISION TEST 3

### Grammar Practice

A.

1. c
2. a
3. c
4. d
5. a
6. c
7. d
8. c
9. b
10. c

B.

1. a good actress
2. oxen are used
3. is a weekly
4. twice as far as
5. wasn't so/as interesting as

### Vocabulary Practice

A.

1. b
2. c
3. a
4. c
5. d
6. c
7. c
8. b
9. d
10. b

B.

1. performance
2. violence
3. behaviour
4. curiosity
5. thought

C.

1. b
2. a
3. d
4. b
5. a

**REVISION TEST 4****Grammar Practice**

A.

1. c
2. c
3. b
4. a
5. b
6. c
7. d
8. a
9. c
10. d

B.

1. is said to be
2. make yourself understood
3. must be sent
4. you should see
5. had his front teeth broken

**Vocabulary Practice**

A.

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. b
5. a
6. c
7. a
8. b
9. d
10. b

B.

1. normally
2. different
3. darkness
4. poisonous
5. boredom

C.

1. a
2. c
3. d
4. d
5. b

**REVISION TEST 5****Grammar Practice**

A.

1. a
2. c
3. d
4. a
5. b
6. b
7. c
8. b
9. d
10. a

B.

1. ordered the robber to drop
2. wished she could explain
3. know if the castle is
4. until I (had) finished reading
5. man that is now leaving

**Vocabulary Practice**

A.

1. b
2. a
3. d
4. c
5. b
6. d
7. a
8. d
9. b
10. d

B.

1. Safety
2. healthy
3. signature
4. central
5. reliable

C.

1. c
2. d
3. c
4. a
5. b

**REVISION TEST 6****Grammar Practice**

A.

1. b
2. a
3. a
4. c
5. d
6. b
7. d
8. c
9. c
10. c

B.

1. is so nice (a day)
2. once did he tell
3. except (for) Jason agreed
4. the play was depressing
5. time the accident occurred is

**Vocabulary Practice**

A.

1. b
2. c
3. d
4. b
5. c
6. c
7. b
8. a
9. d
10. c

B.

1. prevention
2. loss
3. beginning
4. attention
5. informative

C.

1. a
2. b
3. b
4. d
5. d



# Key to Final FCE/ECCE Tests

## FCE TEST

### Part 1

1. B-out
2. A-aside
3. D-whom
4. D-much
5. C-pile
6. D-crowd
7. C-appearance
8. D-criticised
9. A-however
10. C-say
11. B-managed
12. D-anticipate

### Part 2

13. to
14. for
15. how
16. However
17. on
18. are
19. became
20. So
21. way
22. too
23. up
24. each/every

### Part 3

25. unbelievable
26. frequently
27. ability
28. movements
29. protection
30. necessity
31. Surprisingly
32. threatening
33. unlucky
34. possibility

### Part 4

35. I got on well with
36. so difficult that no one
37. wasn't/weren't out of work
38. did nothing but/except talk about
39. have a preference for

40. was pulled down
41. is not used to studying
42. told me not to take

## ECCE TEST

### GRAMMAR

1. c
2. a
3. b
4. d
5. a
6. c
7. b
8. d
9. c
10. b
11. b
12. a
13. c
14. a
15. d
16. c
17. d
18. a
19. c
20. a
21. a
22. a
23. b
24. c
25. a
26. d
27. b
28. c
29. d
30. d
31. b
32. d
33. c
34. d
35. a

40. b
41. b
42. b
43. a
44. c
45. b
46. b
47. d
48. c
49. c
50. a
51. d
52. a
53. c
54. c
55. d
56. a
57. d
58. b
59. c
60. b
61. a
62. c
63. d
64. b
65. b
66. d
67. c
68. b
69. d
70. c

## VOCABULARY

36. d
37. d
38. d
39. c







# Grammar & Vocabulary Practice

**SAMPLE COPY  
NOT FOR SALE**

**Upper-Intermediate - B2**

***Teacher's Book***

**Grammar & Vocabulary Practice** systematically teaches grammar and vocabulary and helps students develop all skills necessary to succeed in the Revised Cambridge FCE Examination, the Michigan ECCE and other exams.

### **The Student's Book includes:**

- a variety of grammar and vocabulary exercises
- revision units and practice tests
- a glossary
- appendices with prepositions, prepositional phrases and derivatives

### **The Teacher's Book includes:**

- The Student's Book with the Key overprinted
- Photocopiable tests

ISBN 10: 960-443-261-3  
ISBN 13: 978-960-443-261-5



9 789604 432615

  
mmpublications